



**DENTAL BOARD OF CALIFORNIA  
DENTAL ASSISTING COUNCIL MEETING AGENDA**

**Friday, July 26, 2019**

2005 Evergreen Street  
1st Floor Hearing Room  
Sacramento, CA 95815

916-263-2300 or 877-729-7789

**Members of the Dental Assisting Council:**

Jennifer Rodriguez, RDAEF, Chair

Rosalinda Olague, RDA, Vice Chair

Anne Contreras, RDA,  
Cindy Ovard, RDA

Pamela Peacock, RDA  
Bruce Whitcher, DDS

Public comments will be taken on agenda items at the time the specific item is raised. The Council may take action on any item listed on the agenda, unless listed as informational only. All times are approximate and subject to change. Agenda items may be taken out of order to accommodate speakers and to maintain a quorum. The meeting may be cancelled without notice. Time limitations for discussion and comment will be determined by the Council Chair. For verification of the meeting, call (916) 263-2300 or access the Board's website at <https://www.dbc.ca.gov/>. This Committee meeting is open to the public and is accessible to the physically disabled. A person who needs a disability-related accommodation or modification in order to participate in the meeting may make a request by contacting Karen M. Fischer, MPA, Executive Officer, at 2005 Evergreen Street, Suite 1550, Sacramento, CA 95815, or by phone at (916) 263-2300. Providing your request at least five business days before the meeting will help to ensure availability of the requested accommodation. While the Board intends to webcast this meeting, it may not be possible to webcast the entire open meeting due to limitations on resources or technical difficulties that may arise. To view the Webcast, please visit <https://thedcapage.blog/webcasts/>.

**Friday, July 26, 2019**

**9:30 A.M. MEETING OF THE DENTAL ASSISTING COUNCIL**

1. Call to Order/Roll Call/Establishment of a Quorum
2. Approval of February 7, 2019 Dental Assisting Council Meeting Minutes
3. Discussion and Possible Action Regarding Initiation of a Rulemaking to Amend California Code of Regulations, Title 16, Division 10, Chapter 3 Relating to the Dental Assisting Comprehensive Rulemaking Proposal

4. **Public Comment on Items Not on the Agenda**  
The Council may not discuss or take action on any matter raised during the Public Comment section that is not included on this agenda, except whether to decide to place the matter on the agenda of a future meeting (Government Code §§ 11125 and 11125.7(a)).
5. **Future Agenda Items**  
Stakeholders are encouraged to propose items for possible consideration by the Committee at a future meeting.
6. **Council Member Comments on Items Not on the Agenda**  
The Council may not discuss or take action on any matter raised during the Council Member Comments section that is not included on this agenda, except whether to decide to place the matter on the agenda of a future meeting (Government Code §§ 11125 and 11125.7(a)).
7. **Adjournment**



**DENTAL BOARD OF CALIFORNIA  
 DENTAL ASSISTING COUNCIL MINUTES  
 FEBRUARY 7, 2019**

Embassy Suites by Hilton San Diego La Jolla  
 4550 La Jolla Village Drive  
 San Diego, California 92122  
 (858) 453-0400

**Members Present:**

Cindy Ovard, RDA  
 Pamela Peacock, RDA  
 Jennifer Rodriguez, RDAEF  
 Rosalinda Olague, RDA  
 Bruce Whitcher, DDS

**Members Absent:**

Anne Contreras  
 Pamela Davis-Washington

Agenda Item 1: Call to Order/Roll Call/Establishment of a Quorum

The meeting of the Dental Assisting Council was called to order by acting Chair Dr. Bruce Whitcher. Roll was called and a quorum established.

Agenda Item 2: Approval of November 29, 2018 Dental Assisting Council Meeting Minutes

M/S/C (Olague/Ovard) to approve the minutes without any changes. There was no public comment.

| Council Member:  | Aye: | Nay: | Abstain: | Absent: | Recusal: |
|------------------|------|------|----------|---------|----------|
| Contreras        |      |      |          | ✓       |          |
| Davis-Washington |      |      |          | ✓       |          |
| Olague           | ✓    |      |          |         |          |
| Ovard            | ✓    |      |          |         |          |
| Peacock          | ✓    |      |          |         |          |
| Rodriguez        | ✓    |      |          |         |          |
| Whitcher         | ✓    |      |          |         |          |

Motion passed and the minutes were approved.

Agenda Item 3: Election of Dental Assisting Council Chair and Vice Chair

Dr. Whitcher opened nominations for Vice Chair. Jennifer Rodriguez nominated Rosalinda Olague to serve as vice chair. Ms. Olague accepted the nomination. There were no further nominations from the floor.

| Council Member:  | Aye: | Nay: | Abstain: | Absent: | Recusal: |
|------------------|------|------|----------|---------|----------|
| Contreras        |      |      |          | ✓       |          |
| Davis-Washington |      |      |          | ✓       |          |
| Olague           | ✓    |      |          |         |          |
| Ovard            | ✓    |      |          |         |          |
| Peacock          | ✓    |      |          |         |          |
| Rodriguez        | ✓    |      |          |         |          |
| Whitcher         | ✓    |      |          |         |          |

Ms. Olague was elected vice chair of the DAC.

Dr. Whitcher opened nominations for Chair. Rosalinda Olague nominated Ms. Jennifer Rodriguez to serve as Chair. Ms. Rodriguez accepted the nomination. There were no further nominations from the floor.

| Council Member:  | Aye: | Nay: | Abstain: | Absent: | Recusal: |
|------------------|------|------|----------|---------|----------|
| Contreras        |      |      |          | ✓       |          |
| Davis-Washington |      |      |          | ✓       |          |
| Olague           | ✓    |      |          |         |          |
| Ovard            | ✓    |      |          |         |          |
| Peacock          | ✓    |      |          |         |          |
| Rodriguez        | ✓    |      |          |         |          |
| Whitcher         | ✓    |      |          |         |          |

Ms. Rodriguez was elected chair of the DAC and took over the meeting.

**Agenda Item 4: Update on Dental Assisting Program and Course Applications and RDA Program Re-evaluations**

Tina Vallery, Dental Assisting Program Manager, reported that as of January 9, 2019 the Board has sent out 57 notices to programs and received 55 responses; 14 programs have notified the Board of closures; one program requested an extension; eight programs have been re-evaluated and were re-approved; eight programs were reviewed by subject matter experts and have been notified of deficiencies; twelve programs have submitted curriculum and applications for review, ten of which are currently being evaluated by subject matter experts and two were recently received in the office. Twelve new notices were sent in November 2018 and January 2019.

Ms. Ovard asked whether programs which submit responses to deficiencies are reviewed quickly in order to release the deficiency. Staff responded that deficiency responses are given priority over new audits.

**Public Comment:**

Ms. Zena Delling is representing a group of educators who asked that she read their comments relating to the course re-evaluations and site visits into the record because they

were unable to attend the meeting today. As she began, Legal Counsel suggested it would be more appropriate for her to read the comments under a separate agenda item – public comments for items not on the agenda.

Agenda Item 5: Update on Dental Assisting Examination Statistics

Ms. Vallery reported on the dental assisting examination statistics. Please refer to the DAC meeting materials for this information. There was no public comment.

Agenda Item 6: Update on Dental Assisting Licensing Statistics

Ms. Vallery reported on the dental assisting licensing statistics. Please refer to the DAC meeting materials for this information. Ms. Rodriguez asked how long a license can remain delinquent. Staff responded that after five years, delinquent licenses are cancelled. Ms. Ovard asked about the process to receive a license if it had been cancelled. Staff responded that the licensee would be required to submit an application for a new license to replace a cancelled license. There was no public comment.

Agenda Item 7: Update on the Development of the Dental Assisting Comprehensive Rulemaking Proposal

Ms. Sarah Wallace, Assistant Executive Officer reported. Stakeholder workshops have developed revised regulatory language that will be brought to the DAC for review and comment at the May 2019 meeting. There was no public comment.

Agenda Item 8: Public Comment on Items Not on the Agenda

Ms. Zena Delling is representing three educators who asked that she read their comments relating to the course re-evaluations and site visits into the record because they were unable to attend the meeting today. DAC members were given a list of 20 suggestions to streamline the audit program for RDA programs.

Ms. Delling read Cara Miyasaki's comments. She is Program Director, Dental Assisting, Foothill College and reports that she had received numerous calls from Northern California program directors expressing concerns about the re-evaluation audit process. She feels that six weeks advance notice to submit audit documentation is not enough time. Program Directors are also concerned with repetitive reporting requirement and the difficulty completing existing forms. Ms. Miyasaki believes that the educational regulatory requirements should be revised before program audits occur. She asked the DAC to suspend the re-evaluation process until the educational regulations are updated. Also, she requested that DAC form a subcommittee to evaluate the audit process.

Ms. Delling read Dr. Lidia Hulshof's comments. She recommended that the application be reformatted to allow the programs to plug in data and responses after each question.

Ms. Delling read Diana Harshman's comments. She is the Dental Director for Grossmont Health Occupational Center. She agrees with the suggestions outlined in the "Suggestions for Streamlining Dental Board Audit of RDA Programs".

Dawn Klein, Citrus College, RDA Program Director commented that she is willing to host the meeting with educators and DBC staff to discuss the re-evaluation process.

Agenda Item 9: Future Agenda Items

Ms. Zena Delling requested that the suggestions for streamlining the Board's audit of RDA programs be put on a future agenda.

Agenda Item 10: Council Member Comments on Items Not on the Agenda

Dr. Whitcher asked if there was a program director workshop planned for the future. Staff responded in the Spring. Ms. Ovard asked if DAC members would attend. Ms. Wallace did not anticipate a DAC meeting, but rather a staff driven workshop with subject matter experts.

Adjourned



## MEMORANDUM

|                |  |
|----------------|--|
| <b>DATE</b>    | July 19, 2019  |
| <b>TO</b>      | Members of the Dental Assisting Council  |
| <b>FROM</b>    | Sarah Wallace, Assistant Executive Officer<br>Dental Board of California   |
| <b>SUBJECT</b> | <b>Agenda Item 3:</b> Discussion and Possible Action Regarding Initiation of a Rulemaking to Amend California Code of Regulations, Title 16, Division 10, Chapter 3 Relating to the Dental Assisting Comprehensive Rulemaking Proposal |

Background:

The Dental Assisting Council (Council) of the Dental Board of California (Board) has held several stakeholder workshops since 2015 to develop its comprehensive rulemaking proposal relative to dental assisting. The last workshop took place in March 2018. During each workshop, Board staff received comments from Council members, interested parties, and members of the public regarding needed changes in the current regulatory language relating to dental assisting education, application and examination requirements, and licensure.

Board staff has drafted the attached proposed language for the Council’s review and comment. This is the staff’s first attempt at addressing all comments and feedback received over the last few years from the Council and stakeholders and compile it into one working document with actual regulatory language. This is still very much a working document and should not be considered final.

Board staff has attempted to reorganize the regulatory requirements to provide consistency, clarity, and try to avoid duplication. Additionally, staff has attempted to mesh Board requirements with CODA standards where applicable in an effort to streamline Board requirements with CODA for the approval process; this was done in an effort to eliminate the potential burden for some programs to produce different information for the Board than what is provided to CODA.

Board staff requests the Council review the attached language and provide feedback and direction to aid staff in the further development of the comprehensive rulemaking proposal. Staff will present this document to the Council at the meeting on Friday, July 26 and ask the Council for feedback regarding each section included in the attached language.

Agenda Item 3: Dental Assisting Comprehensive Rulemaking  
 Dental Assisting Council Meeting  
 July 26, 2019

**Please note:** Regulatory language is formatted using underline to indicate new text and strikethrough to indicate deleted text. For ease of reading, staff has taken the approach to insert all new language at the top using underlined text and delete all existing text at the end of each section using strikethrough. Staff did not intentionally leave any previously discussed amendments out or intentionally exclude existing language that is still necessary. Staff requests the Council and stakeholders comment during the meeting regarding any omitted proposed language and any incorrect language.

Action Requested:

Staff requests the Council discuss the proposed language and provide staff with feedback and direction on the preparation of the final proposed language to be considered by the Council and the Board for the initiation of this rulemaking at a future meeting.



**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

**TITLE 16. DENTAL BOARD OF CALIFORNIA  
DEPARTMENT OF CONSUMER AFFAIRS**

**PROPOSED LANGUAGE**

**Title 16. Professional and Vocational Regulations  
Division 10. Dental Board of California  
Chapter 3. Dental Auxiliaries  
Article 1. General Provisions**

**§ 1067. Definitions.**

As used in this subchapter:

(a) "Dental auxiliary" means a person who may perform dental supportive procedures authorized by the provisions of these regulations under the specified supervision of a licensed dentist.

(b) "Dental assistant" means an unlicensed person who may perform basic supportive dental procedures specified by these regulations under the supervision of a licensed dentist.

(c) "Registered dental assistant" or "RDA" means a licensed person who may perform all procedures authorized by the provisions of these regulations and in addition may perform all functions which may be performed by a dental assistant under the designated supervision of a licensed dentist.

(d) "Registered dental hygienist" or "RDH" means a licensed person who may perform all procedures authorized by the provisions of these regulations and in addition may perform all functions which may be performed by a dental assistant and registered dental assistant, under the designated supervision of a licensed dentist.

(e) "Registered dental assistant in extended functions" or "RDAEF" means a person licensed as a registered dental assistant who has completed post-licensure clinical and didactic training approved by the board and satisfactorily performed on an examination designated by the board for registered dental assistant in extended function applicants.

(f) "Registered dental hygienist in extended functions" or "RDHEF" means a person licensed as a registered dental hygienist who has completed post-licensure clinical and didactic training approved by the board and satisfactorily performed on an examination designated by the board for registered dental hygienist in extended functions applicants.

(g) "Oral prophylaxis" means the preventive dental procedures including complete removal of explorer-detectable calculus, soft deposits, plaque, stains, and the smoothing of unattached tooth surfaces. The objective of this treatment shall be creation of an environment in which hard and soft tissues can be maintained in good health by the patient.

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1  
2 (h) "Coronal polishing" means a procedure limited to the removal of plaque and stain from  
3 exposed tooth surfaces, utilizing an appropriate rotary instrument with rubber cup or brush and  
4 a polishing agent.

5  
6 (i) "Direct supervision" means supervision of dental procedures based on instructions given by a  
7 licensed dentist who shall be physically present in the treatment facility during performance of  
8 those procedures.

9  
10 (j) "General supervision" means supervision of dental procedures based on instructions given  
11 by a licensed dentist, but not requiring the  
12 physical presence of the supervising dentist during the performance of those procedures.

13  
14 ~~(k) "Satisfactory educational qualification" means theory, laboratory and/or clinical experience~~  
15 ~~approved by the board.~~

16  
17 (l) "Basic supportive dental procedures" means fundamental duties or functions which may be  
18 performed by an unlicensed dental assistant under the supervision of a licensed dentist  
19 because of their technically elementary characteristics, complete reversibility and inability to  
20 precipitate potentially hazardous conditions for the patient being treated.

21  
22 (m) "Root planing" means the process of instrumentation by which the unattached surfaces of  
23 the root are made smooth by the removal of calculus and/or cementum.

24  
25 (n) "Periodontal soft tissue curettage" means the closed removal of tissue lining the periodontal  
26 pocket, not involving the reflection of a flap.

27  
28 (o) "Gingival" means pertaining to the gingivae, the mucous membrane with the supporting  
29 fibrous tissue.

30  
31 Note: Authority cited: Sections 1614 and 1762, Business and Professions Code. Reference:  
32 Sections 1741(d), 1754, 1759, 1760 and 1762, Business and Professions Code.

33  
34 **§ 1068. Posting of Dental Auxiliary Duties.**

35 All dentists utilizing the services of dental auxiliaries shall post a notice in a common area of the  
36 office which delineates duties and functions deemed by the board as delegable within  
37 stipulated settings and/or circumstances. Such notice shall be readily accessible to all  
38 individuals under supervision of the dentist.

39  
40 Note: Authority cited: Section 1614, Business and Professions Code. Reference: Sections 1751,  
41 1754, 1757, 1759 and 1762, Business and Professions Code.

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 **§ 1069. Permit Reform Act**  
 2 Permit” as defined by the Permit Reform Act of 1981 means any license, certificate,  
 3 registration, permit, or any other form of authorization required by a state agency to engage in  
 4 a particular activity or act. Processing times for the committee's programs are set forth below.  
 5 The actual processing times apply to those persons who take and pass the first available  
 6 examination.

| Name of Program                                    | Maximum period of time in which the Board will notify applicant that application is complete or deficient and what specific information is required | Maximum period of time after the filing of a complete application in which the Board will notify applicant of a permit decision | Actual Processing Times Based On Prior Two Years |                     |                     |
|--|---|---|--|---------------------|---------------------|
|  |   |   | Minimum  | Median              | Maximum             |
| RDA Licensure                                      |   | <del>180 days</del>   | 75 days  | <del>114 days</del> | <del>358 days</del> |
| RDAEF Licensure                                    | 75 days   | <del>120 days</del>   | 28 days  | 35 days             | 55 days             |
| RDH Licensure                                      | 90 days   | <del>120 days</del>   | 32 days  | <del>113 days</del> | <del>270 days</del> |
| RDHEF Licensure                                    | 75 days   | <del>120 days</del>   | 32 days  | <del>113 days</del> | <del>270 days</del> |
| Review and Approval                                |   |   |  |                     |                     |
| RDA Educational Programs                           | 120 days  | <del>150 days</del>   | 64 days  | <del>219 days</del> | <del>370 days</del> |
| RDA Coronal Polish and/or Ultrasonic Scaler Course |   |   |  |                     |                     |
| RDAEF Educational Programs                         | 90 days   | <del>120 days</del>   | 60 days  | 90 days             | 150 days            |
| RDHEF Educational Programs                         | 90 days   | <del>120 days</del>   | 60 days  | 90 days             | 150 days            |
| Auxiliary Licensure Renewal                        | 30 days   | 90 days   | 20 days  | 39 days             | 60 days             |

7  
 8 Note: Authority cited: Section 1614, Business and Professions Code. Reference: Sections 15375  
 9 and 15376, Government Code; and Section 1614, Business and Professions Code.

10  
 11

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

**Article 2. Educational Programs**

**§ 1070. General Provisions Governing All Dental Assistant Educational Programs and Courses.**

(a) The criteria herein shall be met by all registered dental assisting (RDA) programs, registered dental assistant in extended functions (RDAEF) programs, and orthodontic assisting permit courses, dental sedation assistant permit courses, pit and fissure sealant course, coronal polishing courses, ultrasonic scaling courses, infection control courses, and radiation safety courses to secure and maintain approval by the Board as provided in this Article.

(1) All Board-approved programs and courses shall be re-evaluated by the Board approximately every seven years but may be subject to re-evaluation and inspection by the Board at any time to review and investigate compliance with this Article and the Dental Practice Act (Act). Re-evaluation may include a site visit or written documentation that ensures compliance with all regulations. Results of re-evaluation shall be reported to the Board or its designee for final consideration and continuance of program or course approval, provisional approval or denial of approval.

(2) Program and course records shall be subject to inspection by the Board at any time.

(3) The Board may withdraw approval at any time that it determines that a program or course does not meet the requirements of this Article or any other requirement in the Act.

(4) All programs and courses shall be established at the postsecondary educational level or deemed equivalent thereto by the Board.

(5) The Board or its designee may approve, provisionally approve, or deny approval to any such program. Provisional approval shall not be granted for a period which exceeds the length of the program. When the Board provisionally approves a program, it shall state the reasons therefore. Provisional approval shall be limited to those programs which substantially comply with all existing standards for full approval. A program given provisional approval shall immediately notify each student of such status. If the Board denies approval of a program, the specific reasons therefore shall be provided to the program by the Board in writing within 90 days after such action.

(b) Requirements to Obtain and Maintain Board Approval. A new program or course provider shall submit an application for approval to the Board accompanied by a non-refundable application fee as specified in Section 1022.

(1) The Board may approve only those educational programs and courses that continuously meet all requirements as set forth in this Article.

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 (2) As it relates to the application process for approval of registered dental assistant  
2 (RDA) programs and registered dental assistant in extended functions (RDAEF)  
3 programs:

4  
5 (A) The Board may approve, provisionally approve, or deny approval of an  
6 application.

7  
8 (B) If the Board provisionally approves a program, the Board shall state the  
9 reasons for such provisional approval in writing within 90 days of such finding.

10  
11 (i) Provisional approval shall be limited to those programs that  
12 substantially comply with all existing requirements for full approval.

13  
14 (ii) A program applying for Board approval shall receive a finding of  
15 provisional approval from the Board prior to enrollment and instruction  
16 of students.

17  
18 (iii) A program granted provisional approval shall immediately inform all  
19 applicants and enrolling student of its provisional status and again prior  
20 to the beginning of instruction. In addition, students shall be informed of  
21 the potential for graduation while still under provisional status.

22  
23 (iii) Within one (1) year, the Board shall conduct a final program site visit  
24 to ensure adherence to current regulations and shall be granted “full  
25 approval” status upon successful reporting of the final site visit team.

26  
27 (3) As it relates to the application process for approval of stand-alone certification  
28 courses in radiation safety, infection control, coronal polishing, pit and fissure sealants,  
29 orthodontic assistant permit, and the dental sedation assistant permit:

30  
31 (A) The Board may approve or deny approval of an application.

32  
33 (B) A stand-alone certification course provider shall receive approval from the  
34 Board prior to enrollment and instruction of students.

35  
36 (C) All stand-alone certification course providers shall require students to  
37 possess a current certification in Basic Life Support for health care providers as  
38 required by California Code of Regulations, Title 16, Section 1016 to be eligible  
39 for admission to the course.

40  
41 (4) In the event a course or program application is found to be deficient, such deficiency  
42 shall be sufficiently addressed and cleared within 30 days from the date of the  
43 deficiency notification or otherwise such application may be withdrawn from

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 consideration and a new application filing with fee may be required at the discretion of  
2 the Board.

3  
4 (A) In the event a subsequent deficiency is issued, the applicant provider shall  
5 have 30 days to clear the deficiency or otherwise such application shall be  
6 withdrawn from consideration.

7  
8 (B) In the event application requirements are not met upon issuance of a  
9 subsequent deficiency, a denial of approval shall be issued, reported to the  
10 Board and the applicant shall be subject to all application and fee requirements  
11 as a new applicant.

12  
13 (5) Each approved course or program shall be subject to audit of records or site  
14 evaluation and review by the Board at any time.

15 (6) In order to maintain approval, a course or program shall provide the resources  
16 necessary to accomplish education as specified in this Article.

17 (7) Course and program providers shall be responsible for informing the Board, in  
18 writing, of any changes to the course or program content, physical facilities, increased  
19 enrollment, or change in Program Director personnel within 10 days of such changes.

20 (8) At no time shall a program or course provider advertise or represent itself to  
21 communities of interest as “pending approval” nor shall registration or enrollment of  
22 students begin until “provisional” status has been achieved and noticed in writing by the  
23 Board.

24 (9) All courses and programs shall be taught at the postsecondary educational level.

25 (10) All course and program faculty shall be evaluated periodically utilizing student,  
26 administration and peer evaluation to help identify areas of strengths and weaknesses  
27 for each instructor. The evaluations should be communicated to each faculty member.

28 **(c) Additional Board Actions.** Board-approved registered dental assisting programs evaluated  
29 and found to be non-compliant shall be placed on “probationary status” following notification  
30 of the evaluation findings. Consistent with CCR Section 1068, the program shall have 120 days  
31 to respond to the findings, demonstrate compliance and take corrective action.

32  
33 (1) In the event the program should remain on “probationary status” for more than 120  
34 days without taking corrective action, or if the program is unable to meet the required  
35 corrective action within the specified timeframe, the Board shall notify the program or  
36 institution of its intent to withdrawal approved status. Student enrollment shall be  
37 discontinued. The Board shall monitor the program until all students enrolled prior to  
38 the effective date of the withdrawal of approval are no longer enrolled.

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1  
2 (2) Programs or courses who seek to voluntarily cancel their approved status due to a  
3 planned discontinuance, business closure or program closure shall notify the Board no  
4 less than 90 days prior to such action. The Board shall monitor the program or course  
5 provider until all students enrolled prior to the effective date of the withdrawal of  
6 approval are no longer enrolled. Students completing the program shall be considered  
7 graduates of an approved program during this time.

8  
9 **(d) Qualifications for Program and Course Faculty and Instructional Staff.**

10  
11 (1) As it relates to certificate courses, both stand-alone and those incorporated into the  
12 curriculum of a dental assisting program, all faculty and instructional staff providing  
13 didactic, laboratory, pre-clinical and clinical shall meet and maintain, at minimum, the  
14 following qualifications:

15  
16 (A) Possess a valid, active California license to practice dentistry or registered  
17 dental assisting or registered dental assisting in extended functions [or DSA or  
18 OA?] for at least two (2) years immediately preceding any provision of course  
19 instruction;

20  
21 (B) Provide pre-clinical and clinical instruction only in procedures within the  
22 scope of practice of their respective license or permit and shall demonstrate  
23 expertise in each subject area for which they are teaching;

24  
25 (C) Complete and show evidence of completion of educational methodology  
26 courses equaling two (2) hours immediately preceding any provision of course  
27 instruction;

28  
29 (D) Shall be certified in basic life support (BLS) for healthcare professionals to  
30 include use of AED as required by Title 160, Division 10, Chapter 1, Article 4,  
31 Section 1016 (b)(1)(C) of the California Code of Regulations. Recertification  
32 intervals may not exceed two (2) years.

33  
34 (E) Be calibrated in instruction and grading at least annually.

35  
36 (2) As it relates to dental assisting and registered dental assisting programs, all faculty  
37 and instructional staff providing didactic, laboratory, pre-clinical and clinical instruction,  
38 except those serving as a clinical supervising dentist, shall meet and maintain, at  
39 minimum, the following qualifications:

40  
41 (A) Possess a valid, active California license to practice dentistry or registered  
42 dental assisting or registered dental assisting in extended functions [ or DSA or OA  
43 for duties they can legally perform?] for at least two (2) years immediately  
44 preceding any provision of course instruction;

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1  
2 (B) Shall possess at least two (2) years' experience in the application of clinical  
3 chairside dental assisting;

4  
5 (C) Provide pre-clinical and clinical instruction only in procedures within the scope  
6 of practice of their respective license or permit and shall demonstrate expertise in  
7 each subject area for which they are teaching;

8  
9 (D) Prior to instruction, or within two (2) years of initial hire, complete 30-hours  
10 of educational methodology, and

11  
12 (E) Be calibrated in instruction and grading at least annually.

13  
14 (3) As it relates to registered dental assisting in extended functions programs, all faculty  
15 and instructional staff providing didactic, laboratory, pre-clinical and clinical instruction,  
16 except those serving as a clinical supervising dentist, shall meet and maintain, at  
17 minimum, the following qualifications:

18  
19 (A) Possess a valid, active California license to practice dentistry or registered  
20 dental assisting in extended functions for at least two (2) years immediately  
21 preceding any provision of course instruction;

22  
23 (B) Shall possess at least two (2) years' experience in the application of clinical  
24 chairside dental assisting involving four-handed dentistry;

25  
26 (C) Provide pre-clinical and clinical instruction only in procedures within the scope  
27 of practice of their respective license or permit and shall demonstrate expertise in  
28 each subject area for which they are teaching;

29  
30 (D) Prior to instruction, or within six-months of initial hire, complete six (6) hours  
31 of educational methodology, and

32  
33 (E) Be calibrated in instruction and grading by the program director at least  
34 annually.

35  
36 (4) In accordance with B&P Section 1907(b), a registered dental hygienist shall be  
37 deemed qualified to teach in a course or program only if licensure as a registered dental  
38 hygienist was obtained prior to January 1, 2006, otherwise licensure as a registered  
39 dental assistant shall be required prior to instruction in the program.

40  
41 **(e) Qualifications and Responsibilities of Stand-Alone Course Directors.**



**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 (1) On or after the effective date of these regulations (insert date), the course director  
2 of a stand-alone certificate course shall possess, at minimum, the following  
3 qualifications:

4  
5 (A) Possess a valid, active California license to practice dentistry or registered  
6 dental assisting or registered dental assisting in extended functions for at least  
7 two (2) years immediately preceding any provision of course instruction;

8  
9 (B) Provide pre-clinical and clinical instruction only in procedures within the  
10 scope of practice of their respective license or permit and shall demonstrate  
11 expertise in each subject area for which they are teaching;

12  
13 (C) Complete and show evidence of completion of educational methodology  
14 courses equaling two (2) hours immediately preceding provision of any course  
15 instruction.

16  
17 (2) A course director shall actively participate in and be responsible for the following  
18 responsibilities:

19  
20 (A) The implementation and maintenance of all applicable statutory and  
21 regulatory requirements;

22  
23 (B) Ensure all faculty and instructional staff complete or show evidence of  
24 completion of educational methodology courses equaling two (2) hours  
25 immediately preceding provision of any course instruction;

26  
27 (C) Maintaining for a period of not less than five (5) years copies of curricula,  
28 program outlines, course goals and objectives, grading criteria, copies of  
29 faculty/staff credentials, licenses, and certificates, and individual student  
30 records, including those necessary to establish satisfactory completion of the  
31 course;

32  
33 (D) Informing the Board of any major change to the course including changes to  
34 course content, physical facilities including the use of extramural facilities,  
35 faculty or instructional staff, ownership, or intent to conclude business  
36 operations within 10 days of the change; and

37  
38 (E) Ensure all faculty and staff are calibrated in curriculum, instructional methods  
39 and grading criteria at least annually.

40  
41 **(f) Qualifications and Responsibilities of Program Directors.**  
42

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 (1) On or after the effective date of these regulations (insert date), the program director  
2 of a dental assisting, registered dental assisting or registered dental assisting in  
3 extended functions program shall possess, at minimum, the following qualifications:  
4

5 (A) Possess a valid, active California license to practice dentistry or registered  
6 dental assisting or registered dental assisting in extended functions for at least  
7 two (2) years immediately preceding any provision of program instruction;  
8

9 (B) Provide pre-clinical and clinical instruction only in procedures within the  
10 scope of practice of their respective license or permit and shall demonstrate  
11 expertise in each subject area for which they are teaching;  
12

13 (C) Shall possess at least three (3) years' experience in the application of clinical  
14 chairside dental assisting involving four-handed dentistry; and  
15

16 (D) Shall complete and show evidence of completion of educational  
17 methodology coursework equal to one of the following:  
18

19 i. 30-hours for registered dental assisting programs  
20

21 ii. 30-hours for registered dental assisting programs in extended  
22 functions  
23

24 (2) The program director shall actively participate in and be responsible for the  
25 following:  
26

27 (A) The implementation and maintenance of all applicable statutory and  
28 regulatory requirements;  
29

30 (B) Ensure that all faculty and instructional staff complete or show evidence of  
31 completion of educational methodology courses as defined herein immediately  
32 preceding provision of course instruction and shall maintain evidence of  
33 compliance;  
34

35 (C) Maintaining for a period of not less than five (5) years copies of curricula,  
36 program outlines, objectives, grading criteria, copies of faculty/staff credentials,  
37 licenses, and certifications, and individual student records, including those  
38 necessary to establish satisfactory completion of the program;  
39

40 (D) Informing the Board of any major change to the program including changes  
41 to theoretical content, physical facilities including the use of extramural facilities,  
42 faculty or instructional staff, ownership, or intent to conclude business  
43 operations within 10 days of the change;  
44

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 (E) Ensure all faculty and staff are calibrated in curriculum, instructional methods  
2 and grading criteria at least annually;  
3

4 (F) Ensure opportunities have been provided by the institution or program for  
5 faculty and instructional staff of a program to continue their professional  
6 development in order to stay current with advancing technologies and  
7 educational theory. The program director shall ensure that time and budget  
8 allocations are provided by the institution or program for professional  
9 association activities, continuing education, or practical experiences related to  
10 dental assisting education; and  
11

12 (G) Maintain documentation pertaining to completed continuing education and  
13 professional development coursework of the instructors. The program director  
14 shall maintain records for a period of no less than five (5) years.

15 (g) **Facilities and Equipment.** The facilities of all programs and courses shall provide each student  
16 with sufficient opportunity, with instructor supervision, to develop minimum competency in all  
17 duties for which the program or course is approved to instruct. All laboratory and pre-clinical  
18 instruction shall be held at the physical facility.  
19

20 (1) Facilities and equipment shall be maintained and updated to ensure instruction using  
21 contemporary equipment occurs.  
22

23 (2) All radiographic equipment and facilities shall follow the California Department of  
24 Public Health, California Code of Regulations, Title 17, required for equipment and  
25 facilities.  
26

27 (3) In addition, a facility shall have all of the following:  
28

29 (A) A lecture classroom, a lab area, a clinical area, a central sterilization area and a  
30 radiology area for use by the students.  
31

32 (B) Operatories shall be sufficient in number to allow a ratio of at least one  
33 operatory for every six (6) students who are simultaneously engaged in clinical  
34 instruction.  
35

36 (C) Each operatory shall contain functional equipment, including a power-operated  
37 chair for patient or simulation-based instruction in a supine position, dental units  
38 and mobile stools for the operator and the assistant which are designed for the  
39 application of current principles of dental assistant utilization, air-water syringe,  
40 adjustable overhead patient light, oral evacuation equipment, work surface,  
41 handpiece connection, and hand hygiene area.  
42

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1           (D) Each operatory shall be of sufficient size to simultaneously accommodate one  
2           student, one instructor, and one patient or student partner.

3  
4           (E) Access by all students to equipment necessary to develop dental assisting skills  
5           in each designated duty.

6  
7           (F) Infection control equipment shall be provided according to the requirements of  
8           CCR Title 16, Division 10, Chapter 1, Article 1, Section 1005.

9  
10 **(h) Minimum Standards for Health and Safety.** All programs and courses shall establish written  
11 **laboratory, preclinical, and clinical protocols including mechanisms to ensure the health and**  
12 **safety of faculty and students and the management of emergencies.**

13  
14           (1) Written protocols for handling emergencies shall be provided to all students, faculty  
15           and appropriate staff.

16  
17           (2) Emergency equipment shall include oxygen delivery system and first aid kits readily  
18           accessible and fully functional within the area(s) of instruction. Additional emergency  
19           equipment may be onsite as deemed appropriate and in compliance within institutional  
20           guidelines, where applicable.

21  
22           (3) Students, faculty and appropriate support staff shall be encouraged to be immunized  
23           against and/or tested for infectious diseases in accordance with current CDC guidelines  
24           for Dental Healthcare Professionals, prior to contact with patients and/or infectious  
25           objects or materials, to minimize the risk to patients and personnel.

26  
27 **(i) Curriculum Organization, Competency and Learning Resources.** The organization of the  
28 **curriculum for all courses and programs shall be flexible, creating opportunities for adjustments**  
29 **to and research of advancements and emerging technologies in the profession of dental assisting**  
30 **as provided in this Article.**

31  
32           (1) Curriculum shall provide students with an understanding of all procedures as provided  
33           in each Section of this Article and an ability to perform each procedure with competence.

34  
35           (2) A program or course shall sequence curriculum in such a manner so as to ensure that  
36           students become certified in basic life support (BLS) for healthcare professionals to  
37           include use of AED as required by Title 160, Division 10, Chapter 1, Article 4, Section 1016  
38           (b)(1)(C) of the California Code of Regulations prior to pre-clinical or clinical experiences.

39  
40           (3) Curriculum shall include remediation procedures and a policy outlining guidelines for  
41           students who fail to successfully complete the course or program.

42  
43           (4) Students shall be provided a course syllabus that contains:  
44

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 (A) A course title, course number or identifier, course description, course hours, all  
2 faculty names, and contact information;

3  
4 (B) Course content outline including topics to be presented;

5  
6 (C) Specific instructional objectives for each topic presented;

7  
8 (D) Learning experiences with associated assessment mechanisms;

9  
10 (E) Course or program schedule including time allocated for didactic, lab or  
11 preclinical, and clinical learning experiences;

12  
13 (F) Specific evaluation procedures for course-grade calculating which includes  
14 competency evaluations and rubrics, and

15  
16 (G) A remediation policy and procedures.

17  
18 (5) Students shall be provided a course outline that contains:

19  
20 (A) Specific performance objectives and the evaluation criteria used for all  
21 assessments of laboratory, pre-clinical and clinical experiences;

22  
23 (B) The minimum number of satisfactory performances in each evaluated area  
24 necessary for program or course success; and

25  
26 (C) The minimum standards for performance in each evaluated area, the grading  
27 criteria and the protocols or procedures that may cause the student to fail the task  
28 or procedure.

29  
30 (6) Students shall have reasonable access to dental and medical reference textbooks,  
31 electronic and internet resources, current scientific journals, audiovisual materials and  
32 other relevant resources.

33  
34 (j) **Didactic Instruction.** All theoretical instruction (didactic) shall meet the content and hours  
35 requirements of each Section within this Article.

36  
37 (1) The total required didactic hours of a program or course may be delivered through in-  
38 person, hybrid or online instruction. Online learning shall be overseen by qualified faculty  
39 with experience and education in online learning formats and electronic delivery of  
40 curriculum content.

41  
42 (A) All students shall have access to the course's hazardous waste management  
43 plan for the disposal of needles, cartridges, and medical waste.

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1           (B) All students shall have access to the course’s clinic and radiation hazardous  
2           communication plan.

3  
4           (C) All students shall receive a copy of the course’s bloodborne and infectious  
5           diseases exposure control plan, which shall include emergency exposure  
6           information.

7  
8           (D) All instructional staff and faculty of programs and courses shall review  
9           emergency management protocols at least annually during staff calibration  
10           meetings to ensure consistency and compliance and such meetings shall be  
11           documented and maintained by the course or program director for a period for no  
12           less than five (5) years.

13  
14   (k) **Clinical Instruction.** Unless otherwise stated herein, clinical instruction shall be of sufficient  
15   duration to allow the procedures to be performed to clinical proficiency.

16  
17           (1) Prior to demonstrating clinical competencies, patient-based assignments, and  
18           externships, students shall demonstrate minimum competence in laboratory or preclinical  
19           performance of each procedure they will be expected to perform in their clinical  
20           experiences.

21  
22           (2) Each program or course provider utilizing a dental clinic or dental practice as an  
23           extramural dental facility for the purposes of clinical training shall have a contract of  
24           affiliation completed and retained for a period of at least five (5) years and made available  
25           upon site evaluation by the Board. Such written contract shall include a description of the  
26           settings in which the clinical training may be received and shall provide for direct  
27           supervision of such training by qualified staff and the supervising licensed dentist of the  
28           facility.

29  
30           (3) The program or course director, or a designated faculty member, shall be responsible  
31           for selecting extramural clinical facilities and evaluating student competence before and  
32           after the clinical assignment.

33  
34           (4) Prior to student assignment in an extramural clinical facility, the program or course  
35           director, or a designated faculty or instructional staff member, shall make available to all  
36           extramural staff information that shall include, at a minimum, the objectives of the  
37           program or course, the student's preparation for the clinical assignment, and a review of  
38           procedures and criteria to be used by the dentist or the licensed personnel in the  
39           extramural dental facility in evaluating the student during the assignment.

40  
41           (5) Prior to clinical experiences on any subject, including student partners, the patient  
42           shall complete a health history and consent acknowledging the procedure is being  
43           performed by a student of the course or program. Such documentation shall be

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 maintained in all student records.

2  
3 (6) In accordance with Business and Professions Code Section 1626.1, the operations by  
4 bona fide students enrolled in a Board-approved course or educational program in  
5 registered dental assisting or registered dental assisting in extended functions, whereby  
6 the performance of clinical procedures are a required element and that are under the  
7 general programmatic and academic supervision of that educational program or course,  
8 are exempt from the laws prohibiting the unlicensed practice of dentistry until such time  
9 as all clinical requirements of the program or course have been completed or upon  
10 graduation. This provision shall be clearly stated in all contracts of affiliation issued to  
11 extramural facilities and to all supervising dentists prior to the utilization of enrolled  
12 students in a clinical setting.

13  
14 (l) **Recordkeeping.** All course and program directors shall be responsible to obtain and maintain  
15 the following records for a period of not less than five (5) years:

16  
17 (1) A copy of each approved curriculum including a course/program syllabi and  
18 course/program outline(s);

19  
20 (2) A copy of completed written examinations, rubrics, and completed competency  
21 evaluations;

22  
23 (3) Evidence of faculty calibration meetings, faculty credentials, licenses, and certificates;

24  
25 (4) Minutes of all advisory board meetings and meeting sign-in sheets;

26  
27 (5) Individual student records, including those necessary to establish satisfactory  
28 completion of the course or program; and

29  
30 (6) A copy of all certificates issued at the time of completion of the course or program.

31  
32 (m) **Certificate of Completion as Prescribed by the Board.** All course providers and programs shall  
33 issue an original certificate of completion which shall have been approved by the Board at the  
34 time of course and program application for approval. Only after a student has demonstrated  
35 successful completion of all educational requirements and final examinations in accordance with  
36 each Section of this Article shall a program or course issue a certificate of completion.

37  
38 (1) The Board shall issue provider numbers to all approved dental assisting courses and  
39 programs which shall be clearly indicated on all certificates.

40  
41 (A) For coursework in radiation safety, infection control and dental assisting  
42 jurisprudence completed by students of a registered dental assisting program who,  
43 with or without graduation, successfully completes the educational requirements

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1           for each subject as part of the program curriculum, the program shall issue such  
2           certificates of completion. The Board shall recognize certificates of completion  
3           issued by the program as equivalent to having completed a stand-alone course.

4  
5           (2) Each certificate shall include the total number of program or course hours completed.

6  
7           (3) Providers shall retain hard copy or electronic copy of records of course or program  
8           completion for five (5) years from the date of completion and provide records upon written  
9           request by the Board within 30 days.

10  
11           **(n) Appeal Process for a Denied Application for Approval.** The Board may deny or withdraw its  
12           approval of a course or program. If the Board denies or withdraws approval, the reasons for  
13           withdrawal or denial will be provided in writing within ninety (90) days.

14  
15           (1) Any course or program provider whose approval is denied or withdrawn shall be  
16           granted an informal conference before the Executive Officer or his or her designee, prior  
17           to the effective date of such action. The course provider shall be given at least ten days'  
18           notice of the time and place of such informal conference and the specific grounds for the  
19           proposed action.

20  
21           (2) The course provider may appeal the denial or withdrawal of approval by either:

22  
23                   (A) Appearing at the informal conference. The Executive Officer shall notify the  
24                   course or program provider of the final decision of the Board within ten days of  
25                   the informal conference. Based on the outcome of the informal conference, the  
26                   provider may then request a hearing to contest the Board's final decision. A  
27                   provider shall request a hearing by written notice to the Board within 30 calendar  
28                   days of the postmark date of the letter of the Board's final decision after informal  
29                   conference. Hearings shall be held pursuant to the provisions of Chapter 5  
30                   (commencing with Section 11500) of Part 1 of Division 3 of Title 2 of the  
31                   Government Code; or,

32  
33                   (B) Notifying the Board, in writing, the program or course provider's election to  
34                   forego the informal conference and to proceed with a hearing pursuant to the  
35                   provisions of Chapter 5 (commencing with Section 11500) of Part 1 of Division 3  
36                   of Title 2 of the Government Code. Such notification shall be made to the  
37                   Committee before the date of the informal conference.

38  
39           ~~(a) (1) The criteria in subdivisions (b) to (j), inclusive, shall be met by a dental assisting~~  
40           ~~program or course and all orthodontic assisting and dental sedation assisting permit~~  
41           ~~programs or courses to secure and maintain approval by the Board as provided in this~~  
42           ~~Article.~~



**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1  
2 ~~(2) The Board may approve, provisionally approve, or deny approval of any program or~~  
3 ~~course for which an application to the Board for approval is required. All Registered~~  
4 ~~Dental Assistant (RDA) and Registered Dental Assistant in Extended Functions (RDAEF)~~  
5 ~~programs and dental assisting educational courses shall be re-evaluated approximately~~  
6 ~~every seven years, but may be subject to re-evaluation and inspection by the Board at~~  
7 ~~any time to review and investigate compliance with this Article and the Dental Practice~~  
8 ~~Act (Act). Re-evaluation may include a site visit or written documentation that ensures~~  
9 ~~compliance with all regulations. Results of re-evaluation shall be reported to the Board~~  
10 ~~or its designee for final consideration and continuance of program or course approval,~~  
11 ~~provisional approval or denial of approval.~~

12  
13 ~~(3) Program and course records shall be subject to inspection by the Board at any time.~~

14  
15 ~~(4) The Board may withdraw approval at any time that it determines that a program or~~  
16 ~~course does not meet the requirements of this Article or any other requirement in the~~  
17 ~~Act.~~

18  
19 ~~(5) All programs and courses shall be established at the postsecondary educational level~~  
20 ~~or deemed equivalent thereto by the Board.~~

21  
22 ~~(6) The Board or its designee may approve, provisionally approve, or deny approval to~~  
23 ~~any such program. Provisional approval shall not be granted for a period which exceeds~~  
24 ~~the length of the program. When the Board provisionally approves a program, it shall~~  
25 ~~state the reasons therefore. Provisional approval shall be limited to those programs~~  
26 ~~which substantially comply with all existing standards for full approval. A program given~~  
27 ~~provisional approval shall immediately notify each student of such status. If the Board~~  
28 ~~denies approval of a program, the specific reasons therefore shall be provided to the~~  
29 ~~program by the Board in writing within 90 days after such action.~~

30  
31 ~~(b) The program or course director shall possess a valid, active, and current license issued by~~  
32 ~~the Board or the dental hygiene committee. The program or course director shall actively~~  
33 ~~participate in and be responsible for the administration of the program or course. Specifically,~~  
34 ~~the program or course director shall be responsible for the following requirements:~~

35  
36 ~~(1) Maintaining for a period of not less than five years copies of curricula, program~~  
37 ~~outlines, objectives, and grading criteria, and copies of faculty credentials, licenses, and~~  
38 ~~certifications, and individual student records, including those necessary to establish~~  
39 ~~satisfactory completion of the program or course.~~

40  
41 ~~(2) Informing the Board of any major change to the program or course content, physical~~  
42 ~~facilities, or faculty, within 10 days of the change.~~

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1           ~~(3) Ensuring that all staff and faculty involved in clinical instruction meet the~~  
2           ~~requirements set forth in this Article.~~

3  
4           ~~(c) Course faculty and instructional staff shall be authorized to provide instruction by the~~  
5           ~~program or course director at the educational facility in which instruction is provided.~~

6  
7           ~~(d) No faculty or instructional staff member shall instruct in any procedure that he or she does~~  
8           ~~not hold a license or permit in California to perform. Each faculty or instructional staff member~~  
9           ~~shall possess a valid, active, and current license issued by the Board or the Dental Hygiene~~  
10           ~~Committee of California, shall have been licensed or permitted for a minimum of two years, and~~  
11           ~~possess experience in the subject matter he or she is teaching. An instructor who has held a~~  
12           ~~license as a registered dental assistant or registered dental assistant in extended functions for~~  
13           ~~at least two years, who then becomes a permit holder as an Orthodontic Assistant on or after~~  
14           ~~January 1, 2010, shall not be required to have held such a permit for two years in order to~~  
15           ~~instruct in the subject area.~~

16  
17           ~~(e) A certificate, diploma, or other evidence of completion shall be issued to each student who~~  
18           ~~successfully completes the program or course and shall include the following: the student's~~  
19           ~~name, the name of the program or course, the date of completion, and the signature of the~~  
20           ~~program or course director or his or her designee.~~

21  
22           ~~(f) Facilities and class scheduling shall provide each student with sufficient opportunity, with~~  
23           ~~instructor supervision, to develop minimum competency in all duties for which the program or~~  
24           ~~course is approved to instruct.~~

25  
26           ~~(1) The location and number of general use equipment and armamentaria shall ensure~~  
27           ~~that each student has the access necessary to develop minimum competency in all of~~  
28           ~~the duties for which the program or course is approved to instruct. The program or~~  
29           ~~course provider may either provide the specified equipment and supplies or require that~~  
30           ~~the student provide them. Nothing in this Section shall preclude a dental office that~~  
31           ~~contains the equipment required by this Section from serving as a location for~~  
32           ~~laboratory instruction.~~

33  
34           ~~(2) Clinical instruction shall be of sufficient duration to allow the procedures to be~~  
35           ~~performed to clinical proficiency. Operatories shall be sufficient in number to allow a~~  
36           ~~ratio of at least one operatory for every five students who are simultaneously engaged~~  
37           ~~in clinical instruction.~~

38  
39           ~~(A) Each operatory shall contain functional equipment, including a power-~~  
40           ~~operated chair for patient or simulation based instruction in a supine position,~~  
41           ~~operator and assistant stools, air-water syringe, adjustable light, oral evacuation~~  
42           ~~equipment, work surface, handpiece connection, and adjacent hand-washing~~  
43           ~~sink.~~

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1           ~~(B) Each operatory shall be of sufficient size to simultaneously accommodate one~~  
2           ~~student, one instructor, and one patient or student partner.~~

3  
4           ~~(C) Prior to clinical assignments, students shall demonstrate minimum~~  
5           ~~competence in laboratory or preclinical performance of the procedures they will~~  
6           ~~be expected to perform in their clinical experiences.~~

7  
8           ~~(g) The program or course shall establish written clinical and laboratory protocols that comply~~  
9           ~~with the Board's Minimum Standards for Infection Control (Cal. Code Regs., Title 16, Section~~  
10           ~~1005) and other federal, state, and local requirements governing infection control. The program~~  
11           ~~or course shall provide these protocols to all students, faculty, and instructional staff to ensure~~  
12           ~~compliance. Adequate space shall be provided for handling, processing, and sterilizing all~~  
13           ~~armamentarium.~~

14  
15           ~~(h) A written policy on managing emergency situations shall be made available to all students,~~  
16           ~~faculty, and instructional staff. All faculty and staff involved in the direct oversight of patient~~  
17           ~~care activities shall be certified in basic life support procedures, including cardiopulmonary~~  
18           ~~resuscitation. Recertification intervals may not exceed two years. The program or course~~  
19           ~~director shall ensure and document compliance by faculty and instructional staff. A program or~~  
20           ~~course shall sequence curriculum in such a manner so as to ensure that students complete~~  
21           ~~instruction in basic life support prior to performing procedures on patients used for clinical~~  
22           ~~instruction and evaluation.~~

23  
24           ~~(i) A detailed program or course outline shall clearly state, in writing, the curriculum subject~~  
25           ~~matter, hours of didactic, laboratory, and clinical instruction, general program or course~~  
26           ~~objectives, instructional objectives, theoretical content of each subject, and, where applicable,~~  
27           ~~the use of practical application. Objective evaluation criteria shall be used for measuring~~  
28           ~~student progress toward attainment of specific program or course objectives. Students shall be~~  
29           ~~provided with all of the following:~~

30  
31           ~~(1) Specific performance objectives and the evaluation criteria used for measuring levels~~  
32           ~~of competence for each component of a given procedure including those used for~~  
33           ~~examinations.~~

34  
35           ~~(2) Standards of performance that state the minimum number of satisfactory~~  
36           ~~performances that are required for each performance evaluated procedure.~~

37  
38           ~~(3) Standards of performance for laboratory, preclinical, and clinical functions, those~~  
39           ~~steps that would cause the student to fail the task being evaluated, and a description of~~  
40           ~~each of the grades that may be assigned during evaluation procedures.~~

41  
42           ~~(j) (1) If an extramural dental facility is utilized, students shall, as part of an extramural~~  
43           ~~organized program of instruction, be provided with planned, supervised clinical~~  
44           ~~instruction. Laboratory and preclinical instruction shall be performed under the direct~~

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 ~~supervision of program or course faculty or instructional staff and shall not be provided~~  
2 ~~in an extramural dental facility.~~

3  
4 ~~(2) The program or course director, or a designated faculty member, shall be responsible~~  
5 ~~for selecting extramural dental facility and evaluating student competence before and~~  
6 ~~after the clinical assignment.~~

7  
8 ~~(3) Prior to student assignment in an extramural dental facility, the program or course~~  
9 ~~director, or a designated faculty or instructional staff member, shall orient dentists and~~  
10 ~~all licensed dental healthcare workers who may provide instruction, evaluation, and~~  
11 ~~oversight of the student in the clinical setting. Orientation shall include, at a minimum,~~  
12 ~~the objectives of the program or course, the student's preparation for the clinical~~  
13 ~~assignment, and a review of procedures and criteria to be used by the dentist or the~~  
14 ~~licensed personnel in the extramural dental facility in evaluating the student during the~~  
15 ~~assignment, which shall be the same as the evaluation criteria used within the program~~  
16 ~~or course.~~

17  
18 ~~(4) There shall be a written contract of affiliation between the program and each~~  
19 ~~extramural dental facility that includes written affirmation of compliance with the~~  
20 ~~regulations of this Article.~~

21  
22 Note: Authority cited: Section 1614, Business and Professions Code. Reference: Sections 1750,  
23 1750.2, 1750.4, 1752.1, 1752.4, 1752.6 and 1753, Business and Professions Code.

24  
25 **§ 1070.1. Educational Program and Course Definitions and Instructor Ratios.**

26 As used in this Article, the following definitions and student to teacher ratios shall apply:

27  
28 (a) "Clinical instruction" means instruction in which students receive supervised  
29 experience in performing procedures in a clinical setting on patients. Clinical procedures  
30 shall only be allowed upon successful demonstration and evaluation of laboratory and  
31 preclinical skills. There shall be at least one instructor for every six students who are  
32 simultaneously engaged in clinical instruction.

33  
34 (b) "Didactic instruction" means lectures, demonstrations, and other instruction  
35 involving theory that may or may not involve active participation by students. The  
36 faculty or instructional staff of an educational institution or approved provider may  
37 provide didactic instruction via electronic media, home study materials, or live lecture  
38 modality.

39  
40 (c) "Extramural dental facility" means any clinical facility utilized by a Board-approved  
41 dental assisting educational program for instruction in dental assisting that exists  
42 outside or beyond the walls, boundaries or precincts of the primary location of the  
43 Board-approved program and in which dental treatment is rendered.

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 (d) "Laboratory instruction" means instruction in which students receive supervised  
2 experience performing procedures using study models, mannequins, or other simulation  
3 methods. There shall be at least one instructor for every ~~14~~12 students who are  
4 simultaneously engaged in laboratory instruction.

5  
6 (e) "Pre-clinical instruction" means instruction in which students receive supervised  
7 experience within the educational facilities performing procedures on simulation  
8 devices or patients which are limited to students partners, faculty, or instructional staff  
9 members. There shall be at least one instructor for every six (6) students who are  
10 simultaneously engaged in pre-clinical instruction.

11  
12 (f) "Simulated clinical instruction" means instruction in which students receive  
13 supervised experience performing procedures using simulated patient heads mounted  
14 in appropriate position and accommodating an articulated typodont in an enclosed  
15 intraoral environment, or mounted on a dental chair in a dental operatory. Clinical  
16 simulation spaces shall be sufficient to permit one simulation space for each two (2)  
17 students at any one time.

18  
19 Note: Authority cited: Section 1614, Business and Professions Code. Reference: Sections 1750,  
20 1750.2, 1750.4, 1752.1, 1752.4, 1752.6 and 1753, Business and Professions Code.

21  
22 **§ 1070.2. Approval of Board-Approved Registered Dental Assistant Educational Programs**  
23 **Requirements.**

24  
25 (a) All Registered Dental Assistant (RDA) programs in California shall apply for and receive, at  
26 minimum, provisional approval prior to operation and in compliance with CCR Sections 1070 and  
27 1070.1.

28  
29 (b) A registered dental assistant program provider applying for approval shall submit to the Board  
30 a completed "Application for Approval of Registered Dental Assistant Program (New INSERT  
31 DATE)", which is hereby incorporated by reference, accompanied by the designated, non-  
32 refundable fee as defined in CCR Section 1022.

33  
34 (c) New programs approved by the American Dental Association, Commission on Dental  
35 Accreditation prior to submission of an application for approval by the Board may submit proof  
36 of status by the Commission, an electronic copy of the institutional self-study in addition to the  
37 application requirements set forth in this Section.

38  
39 (d) **General Requirements.** In order for a registered dental assistant program to secure and  
40 maintain approval by the Board, it shall establish and continually adhere to the requirements of  
41 Sections 1070 and 1070.1. In addition:

42  
43 (1) A program shall notify the Board, in writing, if it wishes to increase the maximum  
44 student enrollment for which it is approved and shall provide documentation to the Board

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 to reapprove the program for the increased enrollment prior to accepting additional  
2 students.

3  
4 (2) The program shall establish goals and objectives that measure the instructional  
5 effectiveness through ongoing planning and outcome assessments that are documented  
6 and annually reviewed. Findings and conclusions are used for program improvement and  
7 revisions to the overall planning and outcomes assessment.

8  
9 (3) Programs shall establish and maintain an advisory committee comprised of practicing  
10 dentists and clinical dental assistants, all currently licensed by the Board. In addition,  
11 consideration shall be given to appointing a student, a recent graduate or a public  
12 representative to serve on the advisory committee.

13  
14 (A) The advisory committee shall meet at least once each academic year with the  
15 program director, faculty, and appropriate institutional personnel to monitor the  
16 ongoing quality and performance of the program.

17  
18 (B) The advisory committee shall review the programs goals, objectives and overall  
19 effectiveness.

20  
21 (4) The program director and faculty shall ensure a form of governance that allows  
22 participation in the program and institution's decision-making process. The program  
23 director is consulted when matters directly related to the program are considered by  
24 committees that do not include program faculty.

25  
26 (5) The program shall have sufficient financial resources available to support the program  
27 and to comply with this Section.

28  
29 (6) If the program or institution requires approval by any other governmental agency, that  
30 approval shall be obtained prior to application to the Board for approval and shall be  
31 maintained at all times. The failure to maintain that approval may result in the automatic  
32 withdrawal of Board approval of the program.

33  
34 **(d) Program Directors of Registered Dental Assisting Programs.**

35  
36 (1) The program director's teaching contact hours and program responsibilities shall be  
37 less than a full-time instructor who does not have administrative responsibilities and  
38 shall allow sufficient time to fulfill assigned administrative responsibilities. In addition to  
39 the requirements of CCR Section 1070, pertaining to the qualification and  
40 responsibilities of the program director, the program director shall have the authority  
41 and responsibilities for:

42  
43 (A) Budget preparation  
44

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1           (B) Fiscal administration

2  
3           (C) Curriculum development and coordination

4  
5           (D) Selection and recommendation of individuals for faculty appointment and  
6           promotion

7  
8           (E) Supervision and evaluation of faculty

9  
10          (F) Determining faculty teaching assignments and schedules

11  
12          (G) Determining admissions criteria and procedures

13  
14          (H) Scheduling use of program facilities

15  
16          (I) Development and responsibilities to maintain compliance and documentation

17  
18   **(e) Facilities, Equipment and Resources.** At all times, the program shall demonstrate the manner  
19   in which the program will provide all necessary equipment specific to the current duties and  
20   functions of dental assisting and registered dental assistant duties, with the exception of duties  
21   pertaining to patient monitoring, and how the equipment shall be utilized during laboratory,  
22   preclinical, and clinical instruction as appropriate to each type of session.

23  
24           (1) With the exception of a CAD machine, the program shall own the necessary equipment  
25           and have it readily available upon inspection. In the event instruction in basic life support,  
26           and use of the CAD machine is provided by an outside provider, the RDA program shall not  
27           be required to have available or own the necessary equipment.

28  
29           (2) The program shall demonstrate how the equipment and armamentaria ratios  
30           established successfully meet the total number of enrolled students of each class .

31  
32           (3) Instruments shall be provided to accommodate students' needs in learning to identify,  
33           exchange, prepare procedural trays and assist in procedures as they relate to general and  
34           specialty dentistry.

35  
36           (4) Provision shall be made for reasonable access to current and diverse dental assisting  
37           and multidisciplinary literature including reference texts, current journals, audiovisual  
38           materials, and other resources necessary to support teaching, student learning needs,  
39           services and research. Library holdings, which may include access through the Internet,  
40           shall include materials relating to all subject areas of the program curriculum.

41  
42           (5) Consistent with CCR Section 1070, all necessary emergency and first aid equipment  
43           shall be maintained and in good operating order.

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 **(f) Length of Program.**  
2

3 (1) The program shall be of sufficient duration for the student to develop minimum  
4 competence in performing dental assistant and registered dental assistant duties, but in  
5 no event less than 800 hours, at least 275 hours of didactic instruction, at least 260 hours  
6 of combined laboratory or pre-clinical instruction conducted in the program's facilities  
7 under the direct supervision of program faculty or instructional staff and the remaining  
8 hours utilized in an extramural dental facility providing direct patient care and performing  
9 chairside assisting functions.

10  
11 (2) As part of the program's curriculum, no more than 20 hours of didactic and laboratory  
12 instruction shall be devoted to clerical, administrative, dental practice management  
13 specific to curriculum content defined herein.  
14

15 **(g) Program Curriculum – General Guidelines.** Didactic, laboratory, preclinical, and clinical  
16 performance evaluations are integral parts of the program's curriculum.  
17

18 (1) In addition to the requirements of Sections 1070 and 1070.1, curriculum content and  
19 instruction in all registered dental assisting programs shall include provide theoretical  
20 content, laboratory and clinical experiences in a well-defined sequence that ensures each  
21 students level of learning is consistent with the programs stated learning outcomes in  
22 each content area described herein.

23  
24 (2) Where regulations exist specific to areas of study resulting in an independent  
25 certificate, such as, but not limited to, Radiation Health and Safety, Infection Control and  
26 Coronal Polishing, instruction in each subject shall be consistent with related regulations.  
27

28 (3) Curriculum documentation shall be reviewed annually and revised, as needed, to  
29 reflect new concepts and techniques. Program content shall be integrated and of  
30 sufficient depth, scope, sequence of instruction, quality and emphasis to ensure  
31 achievement of the curriculum's all defined competencies.  
32

33 (4) Programs that admit students in phases, including modular, wheel or open-entry  
34 programs, shall provide at minimum, basic pre-requisite instruction in tooth dental  
35 anatomy, tooth numbering, emergencies, first-aid and safety precautions, infection  
36 control, OSHA and sterilization protocols prior to instruction in any other area of the  
37 program's curriculum. Such Pre-requisite instruction shall consist of no less than 100  
38 hours of direct, live, interactive didactic instruction, and shall occur prior to performances  
39 or activities involving patients including student partners.  
40

41 (5) All programs shall provide students with additional instruction in the California  
42 Division of Occupational Safety and Health (Cal/OSHA) Regulations (Cal. Code Regs., Title  
43 8, Sections 330-344.85) and the Board's Minimum Standards for Infection Control (Cal.



**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 Code Regs., Title 16, Section 1005). Students shall successfully complete a comprehensive  
2 written final examination prior to the student's performance of procedures on patients.

3  
4 (6) Ongoing instruction and utilization of safety procedures, infection control protocols,  
5 and equipment care shall be adhered to at all times. Students shall meet a minimum level  
6 of satisfactory competency as defined by the program.  
7

8 (h) **Didactic Instruction.** The content categories include, but are not limited to Biomedical and  
9 Dental Sciences, Dental Materials, Ethics and Professional Responsibilities, Dental Instruments  
10 and Equipment, Chairside Assisting, Dental Practice Management, Health and Safety,  
11 Emergencies, Dental Office Communication, and New and Emerging Technologies.  
12

13 (1) In the area of Biomedical Sciences, the program shall integrate throughout the  
14 didactic, preclinical, laboratory, and clinical performance components of the curriculum,  
15 the following content:

16  
17 (A) Bloodborne pathogens and related diseases

18  
19 (D) Applicable State and Federal Laws and Regulations

20  
21 (E) Hazard Communication Standards

22  
23 (F) Microbiology  
24

25 (2) In the area of Dental Sciences, the program shall provide instruction in and didactic  
26 evaluation of the following areas:

27  
28 (A) Medical and dental terminology

29  
30 (B) General anatomy and physiology

31  
32 (C) Head and neck anatomy

33  
34 (D) Oral anatomy, histology and embryology

35  
36 (G) Oral pathology

37  
38 (J) Pharmacology related to dentistry and the patient to include:

39  
40 (i) Drug requirements, agencies and regulations

41  
42 (ii) Common drugs and prescriptions use in dentistry  
43

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1                   (iv) Anesthetics and topical agents used in dentistry

2  
3                   (vi) Administration of nitrous oxide-oxygen

4  
5                   (vii) Drugs and agents used for treating dental related infection

6  
7                   (viii) Nutrition

8  
9                   (3) In the area of dental materials, the program shall provide instruction in and laboratory  
10 and performance evaluation in the properties, use and manipulation of:

11  
12                   (A) Gypsum

13  
14                   (B) Restorative materials

15  
16                   (C) Bases, liners and bonding agents

17  
18                   (D) Matrix retainers, bands and wedges

19  
20                   (E) Impression materials

21  
22                   (F) Acrylics and or thermoplastics

23  
24                   (G) Waxes

25  
26                   (H) Abrasive agents

27  
28                   (I) Dental laboratory procedures

29  
30                   (i) Study casts

31  
32                   (ii) Fabrication of custom trays

33  
34                   (iii) Temporary crowns and bridges

35  
36                   (J) Preventive materials: polishing agents, fluorides, sealants, varnish

37  
38                   (4) In the areas of Ethics and Professional Responsibilities, the program shall provide  
39 instruction in and didactic performance evaluation of the following:

40  
41                   (A) California Dental Practice Act, including information specific to:

42  
43                   (1) The laws and regulations pertaining to the profession of dental assisting

44

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1                   (2) The duties and supervision levels of all licensed and unlicensed dental  
2                   assistants

3  
4                   (3) The legal responsibilities of all dental assisting licensee and permit  
5                   holders as defined in statute

6  
7                   (B) Malpractice, liability, negligence, abandonment, and fraud

8  
9                   (F) Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act (HIPAA)

10  
11                  (G) Express, implied and informed consent

12  
13                  (H) Legal and ethical issues in dentistry

14  
15                  (I) Report abuse and domestic violence and neglect; mandatory reporter  
16                  requirements for all dental healthcare workers

17  
18                  (J) Risk management

19  
20                  (K) Code of ethics consistent with the dental assisting profession

21  
22                  (L) Laws governing harassment, labor and employment

23  
24                  (M) Licensing, certification and permit requirements to obtain and maintain such  
25                  certificates

26  
27                  (5) In the areas of Dental Operatory, Instruments and Equipment, the program shall  
28                  provide instruction in and didactic, preclinical, clinical and laboratory performance  
29                  evaluation of the following:

30  
31                   (A) Identification, types, functions and operations of dental operatory and  
32                   laboratory equipment;

33  
34                   (B) Identification, types, functions and tray set up of dental instruments used in  
35                   dental procedures;

36  
37                   (C) Operatory set-up and equipment maintenance

38  
39                   (D) Anesthetic syringe set-up and handling

40  
41                   (E) Clean removable appliances

42  
43                  (6) In the area of Chairside Assisting, the program shall provide instruction in and didactic,  
44                  preclinical, clinical performance evaluation of the following:

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44

(A) Assist in four-handed dentistry procedures

(B) Patient education to include pre- and post-operative instructions

(C) Oral hygiene Instructions

(D) Isolation techniques

(E) Basic supportive procedures

(F) All dental assisting and Registered Dental Assistant duties defined by statute

(G) Record patient information and treatment documentation

(H) Aseptic techniques

(I) Chairside assistant ergonomics

(7) In the area of Dental Business Office Management and Procedures, the program shall provide instruction in and didactic and laboratory performance evaluation of the following:

(A) Appointment control

(B) Financial records and fees

(C) Dental office inventory control and purchasing

(D) Computer and dental software

(E) Recall/Recare systems

(F) Management of patient records including paperless and technology-based records management systems

(G) Oral and written communications

(H) Employment skills resume writing

(I) Privacy and confidentiality pertaining to patient records, HIPAA/HITECH requirements

(J) Practice management systems

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1  
2 (K) Insurance systems claims processing and procedure coding

3  
4 (L) Ethical and legal responsibilities including financial misconduct, patient billing,  
5 misrepresentation of services performed, and treatment plan presentation

6  
7 (8) In the areas of Dental Office Communication and Patient Management, instruction  
8 and didactic performance evaluation of the following:

9  
10 (A) Psychology considerations influencing communication and behaviors

11  
12 (B) Adapt skills to varied levels of understanding and cultural orientation

13  
14 (C) Verbal and non-verbal communication

15  
16 (D) Interpersonal skills

17  
18 (E) Communicating with dental office employees

19  
20 (9) In the areas of Emergencies, Health and Safety, the program shall provide instruction  
21 in and didactic and laboratory performance evaluation of the following:

22  
23 (A) Respond to medical emergencies:

24  
25 (1) Take and record vital signs

26  
27 (2) CPR

28  
29 (3) Administer oxygen

30  
31 (B) Basic first aid kit and first aid procedures

32  
33 (C) Common medical emergencies in a dental office

34  
35 (D) Common dental emergencies

36  
37 (E) Safe transport and transfer of patients

38  
39 (F) Emergency procedures in response to workplace accidents:

40  
41 (G) Roles and responsibilities of the dental office employer and employee

42  
43 (1) The role of the injury and illness prevention program of the dental office

44

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1                   (2) The reporting process for workplace injuries including exposure  
2                   incidents

3  
4                   (H) Maintain safe and healthy work environments

5  
6                   (10) As it relates to new and emerging technologies in dentistry, the program shall  
7                   integrate throughout the didactic and laboratory performance components of the  
8                   curriculum, the following content:

9  
10                   (A) Advancements in dental instruments and equipment

11  
12                   (B) Advanced and emerging dental materials and products

13  
14                   (C) Procedures and techniques that incorporate emerging technology used in the  
15                   workplace

16  
17                   (D) Procedures and techniques related to dental specialties including, but not  
18                   limited to, prosthodontics, orthodontics, and endodontics.

19  
20                   (11) A course or coursework in basic life support that, when successfully completed, shall  
21                   result in certification, and shall be provided by an instructor approved by the American  
22                   Red Cross or the American Heart Association, or any other provider recognized by the  
23                   Board as equivalent. The program may require that the student complete certification as  
24                   a prerequisite to program enrollment, or that the student provide evidence of having  
25                   completed certification prior to patient-based competencies and clinical assignment.  
26

27 **(i) Clinical Instruction.** Assisting a dentist shall be an integral part of the educational program  
28 designed to perfect students' competence in performing chairside assisting functions, rather than  
29 to provide basic instruction. In addition to the requirements of Section 1070 and 1070.1 with  
30 regard to extramural instruction and facility use:

31  
32                   (1) If utilized, no more than 25 percent of the total hours of extramural clinical instruction  
33                   shall take place in a specialty dental practice. Specialty dentistry clinical experiences are  
34                   optional and are not required of a registered dental assisting program.

35  
36                   (2) Each student shall be assigned to two or more offices or clinics for clinical experience  
37                   and assisting in general dentistry situations is emphasized.

38  
39                   (3) The major portion of the students' time in clinical assignments shall be spent assisting  
40                   with, or participating in, patient care.

41  
42                   (4) The dental assisting faculty shall plan, approve, supervise, and evaluate the student's  
43                   clinical experience, and the following conditions shall be met:

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1  
2 (A) A formal agreement exists between the educational institution and the facility  
3 providing the experience.

4  
5 (B) The program administrator retains authority and responsibility for the student.

6  
7 (C) Policies and procedures for operation of the facility are consistent with the  
8 philosophy and objectives of the dental assisting program.

9  
10 (D) The facility accommodates the scheduling needs of the program.

11  
12 (E) Notification for termination of the agreement ensures that instruction will not  
13 be interrupted for currently assigned students.

14  
15 (F) Expectations and orientation are provided to all parties prior to student  
16 assignment.

17  
18 (G) Students shall maintain a record of their activities in each clinical assignment.

19  
20 (H) The student shall be present and working clinically at the time of the site visit  
21 and a report by the visiting faculty member shall be completed and entered into  
22 the student record. At no time shall a telephone communication with the  
23 extramural facility be deemed equivalent to or determined to be an acceptable  
24 alternative to a physical site visit by the program faculty or staff.

25  
26 (i) **Optional Program Content:** A registered dental assisting program that desires to provide  
27 instruction in the following regulated areas shall apply separately for approval to incorporate  
28 curriculum on a specific application form issued by the board, herein incorporated by reference,  
29 (insert here):

30  
31 (1) An orthodontic assistant permit course that shall meet the curriculum requirements of  
32 CCR Section 1070.7, except that a program shall not be required to obtain approval to teach  
33 the orthodontic duties allowed for an unlicensed dental assistant which are already  
34 required areas of instruction, specifically the duties of placing ligature ties and archwires,  
35 removing orthodontic bands, and removing excess cement from surfaces of teeth with a  
36 hand instrument. The incorporated curriculum shall be no less than 51 hours, of combined  
37 didactic, laboratory and pre-clinical instruction consistent with the requirements of Section  
38 1070.7 plus additional hours of instruction in ultrasonic scaling for cement removal  
39 consistent with the requirements of Section 1070.5. All experiences shall be performed and  
40 evaluated up to the pre-clinical level and within the institutional facilities under the  
41 supervision of the program faculty. Upon successful graduation of the program, students  
42 shall not be required to complete 12 months of work experience as a dental assistant and  
43 shall be considered immediately eligible to apply for board examination and obtain a permit

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 as an orthodontic assistant which may occur before or after examination and licensure as a  
2 registered dental assistant.

3  
4 (2) A registered dental assisting program that includes instructional content for either the  
5 orthodontic assistant permit or dental sedation assistant permit, or both, shall provide a  
6 certificate or certificates of completion to the program graduate specific to the subject area  
7 and in addition to the RDA program certificate of completion. Certificates shall be used for  
8 demonstration of compliance with education requirements for the permit subject as part  
9 of a total program for registered dental assisting and shall include the institutional name,  
10 board-approved provider number for the program, total hours of instruction completed in  
11 the subject area consistent with the requirements of this Section, a disclosure statement to  
12 both the graduate and any employer indicating that the recipient of the certificate is not  
13 allowed to perform the duties of a permit holder until such time as a board-issued permit  
14 has been obtained, and certification signature indicating successful completion of approved  
15 curriculum. The certificate holder shall utilize the certificate as proof of candidate eligibility  
16 at the time of application submission and shall be deemed an eligible candidate for  
17 examination and permit issuance as having met all educational requirements.

18  
19 **(k) Certificates of Completion.**

20  
21 (1) Upon successful completion of the program, students shall receive certificates  
22 consistent with the requirements defined in CCR Section 1070.

23  
24 (2) In the event the student does not complete the program, but has meet all the  
25 educational requirements consistent with an eight (8) hour infection control course, a two  
26 (2) hour DPA course or a 32-hour radiation health and safety course, the program will  
27 provide certificates to the student verifying that the minimum educational requirements  
28 for employment as an unlicensed dental assistant have been met and shall include the  
29 programs Registered Provider Number issued by the Board for each subject area as defined  
30 in this Article.

31  
32 **(l) Notice of Compliance.** To maintain approval, programs approved prior to the effective date  
33 of these regulations shall submit to the Board a completed "Notice of Compliance with New  
34 Requirements for Registered Dental Assistant Educational Programs (insert date)", hereby  
35 incorporated by reference, within ninety (90) days of the effective date of these regulations.

36  
37 ~~(a) All Registered Dental Assistant (RDA) programs in California shall apply for and receive Board~~  
38 ~~approval prior to operation.~~

39  
40 ~~(b) The Board may, in lieu of conducting its own investigation, accept the findings of any~~  
41 ~~commission or accreditation agency approved by the Board and adopt those findings as its own.~~  
42 ~~All programs accredited by the American Dental Association Commission on Dental~~  
43 ~~Accreditation (Commission) shall submit to the Board after each site visit a copy of the final~~  
44 ~~report of the Commission's findings within 30 days of the final report issuance. New programs~~



**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 approved by the Commission shall apply to the Board and shall submit proof of Provisional  
2 Approval status by the Commission, a copy of the institutional self study, and applications for  
3 Radiation Safety, Coronal Polish, Pit and Fissure Sealants and any other courses required of an  
4 RDA educational program. Acceptance of the Commission's or any accrediting agencies' findings  
5 is at the discretion of the Board and does not prohibit the Board from exercising its right to site-  
6 evaluate a program.

7  
8 (c) If the program is granted the status of "Approved with Reporting Requirements" from the  
9 Commission, the program shall submit to the Board copies of any and all correspondence  
10 received from or submitted to the Commission until such time as the status of "Approval  
11 without Reporting Requirements" is granted. Additionally, if the program withdraws from  
12 accredited status by the Commission, the program shall notify the Board, in writing, of such  
13 status within 30 days.

14  
15 (d) In order for a registered dental assistant program to secure and maintain approval by the  
16 Board, it shall meet the requirements of Sections 1070 and 1070.1 and the requirements  
17 contained in this Section.

18  
19 (1) A program shall notify the Board in writing if it wishes to increase the maximum  
20 student enrollment for which it is approved and shall provide documentation to the  
21 Board to demonstrate compliance with Section 1070 and Section 1070.1 to reapprove  
22 the program for the increased enrollment prior to accepting additional students.

23  
24 (2) Programs shall establish and maintain an advisory committee whose membership  
25 provides for equal representation of dentists and dental assistants, all currently licensed  
26 by the Board. In addition, consideration shall be given to a student, a recent graduate or  
27 a public representative to serve on the advisory committee. The advisory committee  
28 shall meet at least once each academic year with the program director, faculty, and  
29 appropriate institutional personnel to monitor the ongoing quality and performance of  
30 the program and to receive advice and assistance from the committee.

31  
32 (3) Adequate provision for the supervision and operation of the program shall be made.  
33 In addition to the requirements of Sections 1070 and 1070.1, the following  
34 requirements shall be met:

35  
36 (A) By January 1, 2012, each faculty member shall have completed a course or  
37 certification program in educational methodology of at least 30 hours, unless he  
38 or she holds any one of the following: a postgraduate degree in education, a  
39 Ryan Designated Subjects Vocational Education Teaching Credential, a Standard  
40 Designated Subjects Teaching Credential, or a Community College Teaching  
41 Credential. Each faculty member employed after January 1, 2012, shall complete  
42 a course or certification program in educational methodology within six months  
43 of employment. The program director or designated administrator shall be

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1           ~~responsible to obtain and maintain records of each faculty member showing~~  
2           ~~evidence of having met this requirement.~~

3  
4           ~~(B) The program director shall have teaching responsibilities that are less than~~  
5           ~~those of a full-time faculty member. He or she shall actively participate in and be~~  
6           ~~responsible for the administration of the program including the following:~~

7  
8                   ~~(i) Participating in budget preparation and fiscal administration,~~  
9                   ~~curriculum development and coordination, determination of teaching~~  
10                  ~~assignments, supervision and evaluation of faculty, establishment of~~  
11                  ~~criteria and procedures, design and operation of program facilities, and~~  
12                  ~~selection of extramural facilities and coordination of instruction in those~~  
13                  ~~facilities.~~

14  
15                  ~~(ii) Holding periodic staff meetings to provide for subject matter review,~~  
16                  ~~instructional calibration, curriculum evaluation, and coordinating~~  
17                  ~~activities of full-time, part-time, and volunteer faculty or instructional~~  
18                  ~~staff.~~

19  
20                  ~~(iii) Maintaining copies of minutes of all advisory committee and staff~~  
21                  ~~meetings for not less than five years.~~

22  
23           ~~(C) The owner or school administrator shall be responsible for the compliance of~~  
24           ~~the program director with the provisions of this Section and Sections 1070 and~~  
25           ~~1070.1.~~

26  
27           ~~(4) The program shall have sufficient financial resources available to support the~~  
28           ~~program and to comply with this Section. If the program or school requires approval by~~  
29           ~~any other governmental agency, that approval shall be obtained prior to application to~~  
30           ~~the Board for approval and shall be maintained at all times. The failure to maintain that~~  
31           ~~approval shall result in the automatic withdrawal of Board approval of the program.~~

32  
33           ~~(5) The program shall be of sufficient duration for the student to develop minimum~~  
34           ~~competence in performing dental assistant and registered dental assistant duties, but in~~  
35           ~~no event less than 800 hours, including at least 275 hours of didactic instruction, at least~~  
36           ~~260 hours of combined laboratory or preclinical instruction conducted in the program's~~  
37           ~~facilities under the direct supervision of program faculty or instructional staff, and the~~  
38           ~~remaining hours utilized in clinical instruction in extramural dental facilities. No more~~  
39           ~~than 20 hours of instruction shall be devoted to clerical, administrative, practice~~  
40           ~~management, or similar duties. Programs whose demonstrated total hours exceed 800~~  
41           ~~and who meet all the instructional requirements in this Section, may utilize the~~  
42           ~~additional instructional hours as deemed appropriate for program success. To maintain~~  
43           ~~approval, programs approved prior to the effective date of these regulations shall~~  
44           ~~submit to the Board a completed "Notice of Compliance with New Requirements for~~

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 Registered Dental Assistant Educational Programs (New 9/10)", hereby incorporated by  
2 reference, within ninety (90) days of the effective date of these regulations.

3  
4 (6) In addition to the requirements of Section 1070 with regard to extramural  
5 instruction:

6  
7 (A) No more than 25 percent of extramural clinical instruction shall take place in  
8 a specialty dental practice.

9  
10 (B) Program faculty shall visit each extramural dental facility at least once every  
11 ten clinical days.

12  
13 (7) Facilities and class scheduling shall provide each student with sufficient opportunity,  
14 with instructor supervision, to develop minimum competency in all duties that  
15 registered dental assistants are authorized to perform. The following requirements are  
16 in addition to those contained in Sections 1070 and 1070.1:

17  
18 (A) The following are minimum requirements for equipment and armamentaria  
19 during laboratory, preclinical, and clinical sessions as appropriate to each type of  
20 session: amalgamator, model trimmers in the ratio of one for every seven  
21 students, dental rotary equipment in the ratio of one for every three students,  
22 vibrators in the ratio of one for every three students, light curing devices in the  
23 ratio of one for every operator, functional typodonts and bench mounts in the  
24 ratio of one for every two students, functional orthodontically banded typodonts  
25 in the ratio of one for every four students, facebows in the ratio of one for every  
26 ten students, automated blood pressure device, EKG machine, pulse oximeters in  
27 the ratio of one for every ten students, capnograph or simulated device, one set  
28 of hand instruments in the ratio of one set for every two students for each  
29 procedure, respiration device, camera for intraoral use, camera for extraoral use,  
30 CAD machine or simulated device, caries detection device in the ratio of one for  
31 every ten students, and all other equipment and armamentaria required to teach  
32 dental assistant and registered dental assistant duties. With the exception of a  
33 CAD machine and patient monitoring equipment specific to EKG machine, pulse  
34 oximeter, and capnograph, the program shall own the necessary equipment and  
35 have it readily available upon inspection. Patient monitoring equipment owned  
36 by the institution and utilized by more than one program within the institution  
37 premises is acceptable and may be used by the RDA program as needed for  
38 instruction. Instruction by a licensed healthcare provider is acceptable. In the  
39 event instruction in patient monitoring procedures and use of the CAD machine  
40 is provided by an outside provider, the RDA program shall not be required to  
41 have available or own patient monitoring equipment or CAD machine.  
42

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 ~~(B) Instruments shall be provided to accommodate students needs in learning to~~  
2 ~~identify, exchange, and prepare procedural trays and assist in procedures as they~~  
3 ~~relate to general and specialty dentistry.~~

4  
5 ~~(C) Provision shall be made for reasonable access to current and diverse dental~~  
6 ~~and medical reference texts, current journals, audiovisual materials, and other~~  
7 ~~necessary resources. Library holdings, which may include, in total or in part,~~  
8 ~~access through the Internet, shall include materials relating to all subject areas of~~  
9 ~~the program curriculum.~~

10  
11 ~~(D) Emergency materials shall include, at a minimum, an oxygen tank that is~~  
12 ~~readily available and functional. Medical materials for treating patients with life-~~  
13 ~~threatening conditions shall be available for instruction and accessible to the~~  
14 ~~operatories. Facilities that do not treat patients shall maintain a working model~~  
15 ~~of a kit of such emergency materials for instructional purposes.~~

16  
17 ~~(8) Curriculum documentation shall be reviewed annually and revised, as needed, to~~  
18 ~~reflect new concepts and techniques. This content shall be integrated and of sufficient~~  
19 ~~depth, scope, sequence of instruction, quality and emphasis to ensure achievement of~~  
20 ~~the curriculum's defined competencies.~~

21  
22 ~~(A) Programs that admit students in phases, including modular or open entry~~  
23 ~~programs, shall provide, at minimum, basic instruction in tooth anatomy, tooth~~  
24 ~~numbering, general program guidelines, basic chairside skills, emergency and~~  
25 ~~safety precautions, infection control, and sterilization protocols associated with~~  
26 ~~and required for patient treatment. Such instruction shall occur prior to any~~  
27 ~~other program content and prior to~~  
28 ~~performances or activities involving patients.~~

29  
30 ~~(B) All programs shall provide students with additional instruction in the~~  
31 ~~California Division of Occupational Safety and Health (Cal/OSHA) Regulations~~  
32 ~~(Cal. Code Regs., Title 8, Sections 330-344.85) and the Board's Minimum~~  
33 ~~Standards for Infection Control (Cal. Code Regs., Title 16, Section 1005) prior to~~  
34 ~~the student's performance of procedures on patients.~~

35  
36 ~~(9) In addition to the requirements of Sections 1070 and 1070.1 and subdivisions (b)(11)~~  
37 ~~and (b)(12) of this Section, programs shall include the following content:~~

38  
39 ~~(A) Instruction in radiation safety that meets all of the requirements of Cal. Code~~  
40 ~~Regs., Title 16, Sections 1014 and 1014.1.~~

41  
42 ~~(B) Instruction in coronal polishing that meets all of the requirements of Cal.~~  
43 ~~Code Regs., Title 16, Section 1070.4.~~

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 ~~(C) Instruction in the application of Pit and Fissure Sealants that meets all of the~~  
2 ~~requirements of Cal. Code Regs., Title 16, Section 1070.3.~~

3  
4 ~~(D) A course in basic life support provided by an instructor approved by the~~  
5 ~~American Red Cross or the American Heart Association, or any other course~~  
6 ~~approved by the Board as equivalent. The program may require that the student~~  
7 ~~complete this course as a prerequisite to program enrollment, or that the~~  
8 ~~student provide evidence of having completed the course from another~~  
9 ~~provider.~~

10  
11 ~~(E) Instruction in infection control that meets all of the requirements of Cal. Code~~  
12 ~~Regs., Title 16, Section 1070.6.~~

13  
14 ~~(F) Instruction in the Dental Practice Act that includes the content specified in~~  
15 ~~Cal. Code Regs., Title 16, Section 1016 governing Dental Practice Act continuing~~  
16 ~~education courses.~~

17  
18 ~~(10) A program that desires to provide instruction in the following areas shall apply~~  
19 ~~separately for approval to provide the following courses:~~

20  
21 ~~(A) A course in the removal of excess cement with an ultrasonic scaler, that shall~~  
22 ~~meet the requirements of Cal. Code Regs., Title 16, Section 1070.5.~~

23  
24 ~~(B) An orthodontic assistant permit course that shall meet the requirements of~~  
25 ~~Cal. Code Regs., Title 16, Section 1070.7, except that a program shall not be~~  
26 ~~required to obtain separate approval to teach the duties of placing ligature ties~~  
27 ~~and archwires, removing orthodontic bands, and removing excess cement from~~  
28 ~~surfaces of teeth with a hand instrument, and shall be no less than 51 hours,~~  
29 ~~including at least 9 hours of didactic instruction, at least 22 hours of laboratory~~  
30 ~~instruction, and at least 20 hours of clinical instruction.~~

31  
32 ~~(C) A dental sedation assistant permit course that shall meet the requirements of~~  
33 ~~Cal. Code Regs., Title 16, Section 1070.8.~~

34  
35 ~~(D) A Registered Dental Assisting educational program that includes instructional~~  
36 ~~content for either the orthodontic assistant permit or dental sedation assistant~~  
37 ~~permit, or both, shall provide a certificate or certificates of completion to the~~  
38 ~~graduate. The certificate holder shall be deemed an eligible candidate for the~~  
39 ~~permit examination process as having met all educational requirements for the~~  
40 ~~permit examination.~~

41  
42 ~~(11) General didactic instruction shall include, at a minimum, the following:~~  
43

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 ~~(A) Principles of general anatomy, physiology, oral embryology, tooth histology,~~  
2 ~~and head-neck anatomy.~~

3  
4 ~~(B) Principles of conditions related to and including oral pathology, orthodontics,~~  
5 ~~periodontics, endodontics, pediatric dentistry, oral surgery, prosthodontics, and~~  
6 ~~esthetic dentistry.~~

7  
8 ~~(C) Instruction in the Dental Practice Act that includes the content specified~~  
9 ~~in Cal. Code Regs., Title 16, Section 1016, as well as principles of the Health~~  
10 ~~Insurance Portability and Accountability Act (HIPAA) privacy and security~~  
11 ~~standards, risk management, and professional codes of ethical behavior.~~

12  
13 ~~(D) Principles of infection control, waste management, and hazardous~~  
14 ~~communication requirements in compliance with the Board's Minimum~~  
15 ~~Standards for Infection Control (Cal. Code Regs., Title 16, Section 1005) and~~  
16 ~~other federal, state, and local requirements governing infection control.~~  
17 ~~Instruction in infection control shall meet the education requirements set forth~~  
18 ~~in Section 1070.6(e).~~

19  
20 ~~(E) Principles related to pharmacology and biomedical sciences including~~  
21 ~~nutrition and microbiology.~~

22  
23 ~~(F) Principles of medical dental emergencies and first aid management.~~

24  
25 ~~(G) Principles of the treatment planning process including medical health history~~  
26 ~~data collection, patient and staff confidentiality, and charting.~~

27  
28 ~~(H) Principles of record classifications including management, storage, and~~  
29 ~~retention protocol for all dental records including legal and ethical issues~~  
30 ~~involving patient records.~~

31  
32 ~~(I) Principles and protocols of special needs patient management, the psychology~~  
33 ~~and management of dental patients, and overall interpersonal relationships.~~

34  
35 ~~(J) Principles, protocols, and armamentaria associated with all dental assisting~~  
36 ~~chairside procedures.~~

37  
38 ~~(K) Principles, protocols, manipulation, use, and armamentaria for contemporary~~  
39 ~~dental materials used in general and specialty dentistry.~~

40  
41 ~~(L) Principles and protocols for oral hygiene preventative methods including,~~  
42 ~~plaque identification, toothbrushing and flossing techniques, and nutrition.~~

43

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 ~~(M) Principles, protocols, armamentaria, and procedures associated with~~  
2 ~~operative and specialty dentistry.~~

3  
4 ~~(N) Principles, protocols, armamentaria, and procedures for each duty that~~  
5 ~~dental assistants and registered dental assistants are allowed to perform.~~

6  
7 ~~(O) All content for instruction in radiation safety as set forth in Cal. Code Regs.,~~  
8 ~~Title 16, Section 1014.1.~~

9  
10 ~~(P) All content for instruction in coronal polishing as set forth in Cal. Code Regs.,~~  
11 ~~Title 16, Section 1070.4.~~

12  
13 ~~(Q) All content for instruction in the application of Pit and Fissure Sealants as set~~  
14 ~~forth in Cal. Code Regs., Title 16, Section 1070.3.~~

15  
16 ~~(12) Laboratory and clinical instruction shall be of sufficient duration and content~~  
17 ~~for each student to achieve minimum competence in the performance of each~~  
18 ~~procedure that dental assistant and registered dental assistant is authorized to~~  
19 ~~perform.~~

20  
21 ~~(13) Each student shall pass a written examination that reflects the curriculum~~  
22 ~~content, which may be administered at intervals throughout the course as~~  
23 ~~determined by the course director.~~

24  
25 Note: Authority cited: Section 1614, Business and Professions Code. Reference: Section 1752.1,  
26 1752.4 and 1752.6, Business and Professions Code.

27  
28 **§ 1070.3. Approval of Pit and Fissure Sealant Courses.**

29  
30 (a) A course in the application of pit and fissure sealants is one in which has, as its primary  
31 purpose, providing theory and clinical application in preventative sealant techniques. A single  
32 standard of care shall be maintained, and the board shall approve and continue to approve only  
33 courses which continuously maintain a high-quality standard of instruction.

34  
35 (b) A pit and fissure sealant course provider applying for initial approval shall submit an  
36 application for approval, hereby incorporated by reference (insert date), accompanied by the  
37 designated, non-refundable fee as defined in CCR Section 1022. Consistent with CCR Section  
38 1070, the board may approve or deny approval after evaluation of all components of the course  
39 have been performed.

40  
41 (c) Continuation of approval will be contingent upon continued compliance with CCR Sections  
42 1070, 1070.1 and all requirements as required herein.

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 (d) General Provisions: Adequate provisions for the supervision and operation of the course shall  
2 be made in compliance with this Article and the following:

3  
4 (1) Unless otherwise incorporated in a board-approved registered dental assisting  
5 program, providers shall require evidence that all course pre-requisites have been met  
6 prior to acceptance of the participant in the course. Pre-requisites include current  
7 certification in basic life support, completion of an 8-hour board-approved course in  
8 infection control, a 2-hour board-approved course in dental assisting jurisprudence,  
9

10 (2) When instruction is incorporated in a registered dental assisting program, students  
11 shall have completed instruction in infection control, basic chairside skills, anatomy, tooth  
12 morphology and dental materials and shall have obtained certification in basic life  
13 support, as defined herein, prior to the start of instruction in coronal polish.  
14

15 (3) The requirements for the quantity, qualifications and responsibilities of the course  
16 director and all faculty or instructional staff as defined in CCR Sections 1070 and 1070.1,  
17 shall be adhered to at all times.  
18

19 (4) Providers shall not be required to employ a dentist for the purposes of oversight during  
20 clinical instruction.  
21

22 (5) Providers shall require a written permission letter or prescription by a licensed dentist  
23 who shall diagnose and prescribe sealant placement when patient-based experiences are  
24 performed.  
25

26 (e) Facilities and Equipment:

27  
28 (1) Adequate supplies, materials and provisions for instruction in the application of pit  
29 and fissure Sealants shall be provided in compliance with the requirements of CCR  
30 Section 1070.  
31

32 (2) There shall be a sufficient number of safe, adequate, and educationally conducive  
33 lecture classrooms and operatories in compliance with the requirements of CCR Section  
34 1070. Adequate, cleaning, disinfecting, and sterilizing facilities shall be provided.  
35

36 (3) All disinfection and sterilization procedures specified in CCR Section 1005 shall be  
37 incorporated in the course content and followed during all laboratory, simulated-clinical  
38 and clinical experiences.  
39

40 (f) Course Duration: As part of an organized course of instruction, sufficient time shall be  
41 available for all students to achieve minimum competence in the various protocols used in the  
42 application of pit and fissure sealants. The course shall, however, be no less than 16 hours in length  
43 consisting of a combination of didactic, laboratory, and simulated-clinical or clinical instruction  
44 designed for the student to develop minimum competency in all aspects of the subject area.



**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1  
2 **(g) Course Curriculum and Examination:**  
3

4 (1) A detailed course outline shall be established and maintained consistent with the  
5 requirements of CCR Section 1070 and shall be provided to students prior to the start of  
6 instruction.  
7

8 (2) General course objectives and specific instructional unit objectives shall be stated in  
9 writing and shall include theoretical aspects of each subject as well as practical  
10 application. The theoretical aspects of the course shall provide the content necessary for  
11 students to make judgments regarding the application of pit and fissure sealants.  
12

13 (3) Objective evaluation criteria shall be used for measuring student progress toward  
14 attainment of specific course objectives. Students shall be provided with specific  
15 performance objectives and the evaluation criteria that will be used for all aspects of the  
16 curriculum.  
17

18 (4) Each student shall pass a written examination which reflects the curriculum content.  
19

20 (5) Each student shall pass a practical examination in which the student successfully  
21 completes the application of pit and fissure sealants on four (4) teeth.  
22

23 **(h) Didactic Instruction:** Areas of instruction shall include the following as they relate Dental  
24 Science - Oral Anatomy, Histology, Physiology, Oral Pathology, Normal and Abnormal  
25 Anatomical and Physiological Tooth Descriptions  
26

27 (1) Morphology  
28

29 (2) Dental Materials  
30

31 (3) Sealant Basics:  
32

33 (i) Legal requirements  
34

35 (ii) Description and goals of sealants  
36

37 (iii) Indications and contraindications  
38

39 (iv) Role in preventive programs  
40

41 (v) Use of caries identification devices and materials  
42

43 (4) Sealant Materials and Caries Identification Devices:  
44

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 (i) Etchant and/or etchant/bond combination material composition, process,  
2 storage and handling

3  
4 (ii) Sealant material composition, polymerization type, process, storage and  
5 handling

6  
7 (iii) Armamentaria for etching and sealant application

8  
9 (iv) Problem solving for etchant and sealant material placement/manipulation

10  
11 (v) Armamentaria for caries identification

12  
13 (5) Sealant Criteria:

14  
15 (i) Areas of application

16  
17 (ii) Patient selection factors

18  
19 (iii) Caries identification ~~Other indication factors~~ protocols

20  
21 (6) Preparation Factors:

22  
23 (i) Moisture control protocol

24  
25 (ii) Tooth/teeth preparation procedures prior to etching or etchant/bond

26  
27 (iii) Recording of caries identification devices or materials

28  
29 (7) Acid Etching or Etchant/Bond Combination:

30  
31 (i) Material preparation

32  
33 (ii) Application areas

34  
35 (iii) Application time factors

36  
37 (iv) Armamentaria

38  
39 (v) Procedure

40  
41 (8) Sealant Application:

42  
43 (i) Application areas

44

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1           (ii) Application time factors

2  
3           (iii) Armamentaria

4  
5           (iv) Procedure for chemical cure and light cure techniques

6  
7           (v) Sealant evaluation criteria

8  
9           (vi) Sealant adjustment technique

10  
11          (9) Infection control protocols

12  
13          (10) Clinical re-call re-evaluation protocols

14  
15      **(i) Laboratory, Simulated-Clinical and Clinical Instruction:**

16  
17           (1) Providers shall adhere to student/teacher ratios as defined in CCR Section 1070.1 at  
18           all times during laboratory, simulated clinical and clinical instruction.

19  
20           (2) Students shall be provided with established written competencies identifying specific  
21           objective evaluation criteria and performance objectives for all evaluated experiences.  
22           An experience has been successfully completed only if each sealant placed meets or  
23           exceeds all stated performance criteria.

24  
25           (3) Upon completion of all didactic instruction, students shall complete the following  
26           competency evaluated experiences:

27  
28                   (A) Laboratory experiences which may be conducted on a typodont and/or  
29                   mounted extracted teeth. Sufficient time shall be available for students to  
30                   demonstrate minimum competency on both posterior and anterior teeth.

31  
32                   (B) Sufficient time shall be available for students to demonstrate competency on  
33                   anterior and posterior teeth which shall be conducted on either a simulation  
34                   mannequin or clinical patients or a combination thereof.

35  
36           (4) When patient-based competencies are performed, each patient shall undergo a  
37           caries identification procedure performed by the student as part of the evaluated  
38           experience.

39  
40                   (A) Each tooth selected for clinical experience shall be sufficiently erupted to  
41                   maintain a dry field for application of sealant materials.

42  
43      **(i) Course Completion:** Upon completion of the course, each student shall be able to:  
44

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 (1) Identify the major characteristics of oral anatomy, histology, physiology, oral  
2 pathology, normal/abnormal anatomical and physiological tooth descriptions,  
3 morphology and microbiology as they relate to pit and fissure application.

4  
5 (2) Explain the procedure to patients.

6  
7 (3) Recognize decalcification, caries and fracture lines.

8  
9 (4) Identify the indications and contraindications for sealants.

10  
11 (5) Identify the characteristics of a caries identification device, light curing devices,  
12 isolation devices, and self-curing and light-cured sealant materials.

13  
14 (6) Define the appropriate patient selection factors and indication factors for sealant  
15 application.

16  
17 (7) Utilize proper armamentaria in an organized sequence.

18  
19 (8) Maintain appropriate moisture control protocol before and during application of  
20 etchant and sealant material.

21  
22 (9) Demonstrate the proper technique for teeth preparation prior to etching.

23  
24 (10) Select and dispense the proper amount of etchant and sealant material when using  
25 materials requiring etchant; and the proper use of etchless sealant materials including  
26 bondable materials.

27  
28 (11) Demonstrate the proper techniques for application of the etchant and sealant  
29 material.

30  
31 (12) Implement problem solving techniques associated with pit and fissure sealants.

32  
33 (13) Evaluate the etchant and sealant placement techniques according to appropriate  
34 criteria.

35  
36 (14) Check the occlusion and proximal contact for appropriate placement techniques.

37  
38 (15) Adjust occlusion and evaluate or correct proximal areas(s) when indicated.

39  
40 (16) Maintain aseptic techniques including disposal of contaminated material.

41  
42 (k) Certificate of Completion. Upon successful completion of the course, students shall receive a  
43 certificate consistent with the requirements defined in CCR Section 1070.

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 (l) Notice of Compliance. To maintain approval, courses approved prior to the effective date of  
2 these regulations shall submit to the Board a completed “Notice of Compliance with New  
3 Requirements for Pit and Fissure Sealant Certificate Courses” (insert date), hereby incorporated  
4 by reference, within ninety (90) days of the effective date of these regulations.

5  
6 ~~The following minimum criteria shall be met for a course in the application of pit and fissure~~  
7 ~~sealants to secure and maintain approval by the Board.~~

8  
9 ~~(a) Educational Setting. The course shall be established at the post-secondary educational level.~~

10  
11 ~~(b) Prerequisites. Each student shall possess the necessary requirements for application for RDA~~  
12 ~~licensure or currently possess an RDA license. Each student shall have already completed a~~  
13 ~~Board-approved course in coronal polishing.~~

14  
15 ~~(c) Administration/Facility. Adequate provision for the supervision and operation of the course~~  
16 ~~shall be made.~~

17  
18 ~~(1) The course director and each faculty member shall possess a valid, active, and~~  
19 ~~current RDAEF, RDH, RDHEF, RDHAP, or dentist license issued by the Board, or an RDA~~  
20 ~~license issued by the Board if the person has completed Board-approved courses in~~  
21 ~~coronal polishing and the application of pit and fissure sealants. All faculty shall have~~  
22 ~~been licensed for a minimum of two years. All faculty shall have the education,~~  
23 ~~background, and occupational experience and/or teaching expertise necessary to teach,~~  
24 ~~place, and evaluate the application of pit and fissure sealants. All faculty responsible for~~  
25 ~~clinical evaluation shall have completed a two-hour methodology course in clinical~~  
26 ~~evaluation.~~

27  
28 ~~(2) The course director shall have the education, background, and occupational~~  
29 ~~experience necessary to understand and fulfill the course goals. He/she shall actively~~  
30 ~~participate in and be responsible for the day-to-day administration of the course~~  
31 ~~including the following:~~

32  
33 ~~(A) Providing daily guidance of didactic, laboratory and clinical assignments.~~

34  
35 ~~(B) Maintaining for a period of not less than 5 years:~~

36  
37 ~~1. Copies of curricula, course outlines, objectives, and grading criteria.~~

38  
39 ~~2. Copies of faculty credentials, licenses, and certifications.~~

40  
41 ~~3. Individual student records, including those necessary to establish~~  
42 ~~satisfactory completion of the course.~~

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1                   ~~(C) Informing the Board of any changes to the course content, physical facilities,~~  
2                   ~~and/or faculty, within 10 days of such changes.~~

3  
4                   ~~(d) Length of Course. The program shall be of sufficient duration for the student to develop~~  
5                   ~~minimum competence in the application of pit and fissure sealants, but shall in no event be less~~  
6                   ~~than 16 clock hours, including at least 4 hours of didactic training, at least 4 hours of laboratory~~  
7                   ~~training, and at least 8 hours of clinical training.~~

8  
9                   ~~(e) Evidence of Completion. A certificate or other evidence of completion shall be issued to~~  
10                   ~~each student who successfully completes the course.~~

11  
12                   ~~(f) Facilities and Resources. Facilities and class scheduling shall provide each student with~~  
13                   ~~sufficient opportunity, with instructor supervision, to develop minimum competency in~~  
14                   ~~applying pit and fissure sealants. Such facilities shall include safe, adequate and educationally~~  
15                   ~~conducive:~~

16  
17                   ~~(1) Lecture classrooms. Classroom size and equipment shall accommodate the number~~  
18                   ~~of students enrolled.~~

19  
20                   ~~(2) Operatories. Operatories shall be sufficient in number to allow a ratio of at least one~~  
21                   ~~operatory for every five students at any one time.~~

22  
23                   ~~(A) Each operatory shall replicate a modern dental office containing functional~~  
24                   ~~equipment including: a power operated chair for treating patients in a supine~~  
25                   ~~position; operator and assistant stools; air water syringe; adjustable light; oral~~  
26                   ~~evacuation equipment; work surface; hand washing sink; curing light, and all~~  
27                   ~~other armamentarium required to instruct in the application of pit and fissure~~  
28                   ~~sealants.~~

29  
30                   ~~(B) Each operatory shall be of sufficient size to accommodate a practitioner, a~~  
31                   ~~student, an instructor, and a patient at one time.~~

32  
33                   ~~(3) Laboratories. The location and number of general use equipment shall assure that~~  
34                   ~~each student has the access necessary to develop minimum competency in the~~  
35                   ~~application of pit and fissure sealants. Protective eyewear is required for each student.~~

36  
37                   ~~(4) Infection Control. The program shall establish written clinical and laboratory~~  
38                   ~~protocols to ensure adequate asepsis, infection and hazard control, and disposal of~~  
39                   ~~hazardous wastes, which shall comply with the board's regulations and other Federal,~~  
40                   ~~State, and local requirements. The program shall provide such protocols to all students,~~  
41                   ~~faculty, and appropriate staff to assure compliance with such protocols. Adequate space~~  
42                   ~~shall be provided for preparing and sterilizing all armamentarium.~~

43  
44                   ~~(5) Emergency Materials/Basic Life Support.~~

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1  
2           ~~(A) A written policy on managing emergency situations shall be made available~~  
3           ~~to all students, faculty, and staff.~~

4  
5           ~~(B) All students, faculty, and staff involved in the direct provision of patient care~~  
6           ~~shall be certified in basic life support procedures, including cardiopulmonary~~  
7           ~~resuscitation. Re-certification intervals may not exceed two years. The program~~  
8           ~~shall document, monitor, and ensure compliance by such students, faculty, and~~  
9           ~~staff.~~

10  
11 ~~(g) Program Content.~~

12  
13           ~~(1) Sufficient time shall be available for all students to obtain laboratory and clinical~~  
14           ~~experience to achieve minimum competence in the various protocols used in the~~  
15           ~~application of pit and fissure sealants.~~

16  
17           ~~(2) A detailed course outline shall be provided to the board which clearly states~~  
18           ~~curriculum subject matter and specific instruction hours in the individual areas of~~  
19           ~~didactic, laboratory, and clinical instruction.~~

20  
21           ~~(3) General program objectives and specific instructional unit objectives shall be stated~~  
22           ~~in writing, and shall include theoretical aspects of each subject as well as practical~~  
23           ~~application. The theoretical aspects of the program shall provide the content necessary~~  
24           ~~for students to make judgments regarding the application of pit and fissure sealants.~~  
25           ~~The course shall assure that students who successfully complete the course can apply~~  
26           ~~pit and fissure sealants with minimum competence.~~

27  
28           ~~(4) Objective evaluation criteria shall be used for measuring student progress toward~~  
29           ~~attainment of specific course objectives. Students shall be provided with specific unit~~  
30           ~~objectives and evaluation criteria that will be used for all aspects of the curriculum~~  
31           ~~including written and practical examinations. The program shall establish a standard of~~  
32           ~~performance that states the minimum number of satisfactory performances that are~~  
33           ~~required for each procedure.~~

34  
35           ~~(5) Areas of instruction shall include at least the following as they relate to pit and~~  
36           ~~fissure sealants:~~

37  
38                   ~~(A) Dental Science—Oral Anatomy, Histology, Physiology, Oral Pathology,~~  
39                   ~~Normal/Abnormal Anatomical and Physiological Tooth Descriptions~~

40  
41                   ~~(B) Morphology and Microbiology~~

42  
43                   ~~(C) Dental Materials and Pharmacology~~

44

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1       (D) Sealant Basics

- 2               1. Legal requirements  
3               2. Description and goals of sealants  
4               3. Indications and contraindications  
5               4. Role in preventive programs

6  
7       (E) Sealant Materials

- 8  
9               1. Etchant and/or etchant/bond combination material composition,  
10              process, storage and handling  
11              2. Sealant material composition, polymerization type, process, storage  
12              and handling  
13              3. Armamentaria for etching and sealant application  
14              4. Problem solving for etchant and sealant material  
15              placement/manipulation

16  
17       (F) Sealant Criteria

- 18  
19              1. Areas of application  
20              2. Patient selection factors  
21              3. Other indication factors

22  
23       (G) Preparation Factors

- 24  
25              1. Moisture control protocol  
26              2. Tooth/teeth preparation procedures prior to etching or etchant/bond

27  
28       (H) Acid Etching or Etchant/Bond Combination

- 29  
30              1. Material preparation  
31              2. Application areas  
32              3. Application time factors  
33              4. Armamentaria  
34              5. Procedure  
35              6. Etchant or etchant/bond evaluation criteria

36  
37       (I) Sealant Application

- 38  
39              1. Application areas  
40              2. Application time factors  
41              3. Armamentaria  
42              4. Procedure for chemical cure and light cure techniques  
43              5. Sealant evaluation criteria  
44              6. Sealant adjustment techniques



**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1  
2           ~~(J) Infection control protocol~~

3  
4           ~~(K) Clinical re-call re-evaluation protocols~~

5  
6           ~~(6) There shall be no more than 14 students per instructor during laboratory instruction. Laboratory instruction may be conducted on a typodont, a simulated model, and/or mounted extracted teeth. Sufficient time shall be available for all students to obtain laboratory experience to achieve minimum competence in pit and fissure sealant application prior to the performance of procedures on patients.~~

7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12           ~~(7) Clinical instruction shall be of sufficient duration to allow the procedures to be performed to clinical proficiency. There shall be no more than 6 students per instructor during clinical instruction. Clinical instruction shall include clinical experience on four patients with two of the four patients used for the clinical examination. Each clinical patient shall have a minimum of four (4) virgin, non-restored, natural teeth, sufficiently erupted so that a dry field can be maintained, for application of the etching, or etchant/bond combination, and sealant materials. Such clinical instruction shall include teeth in all four quadrants for each patient.~~

13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21           ~~(h) Externship Instruction.~~

22  
23           ~~(1) If an extramural clinical facility is utilized, students shall, as part of an organized program of instruction, be provided with planned, supervised clinical instruction in the application of pit and fissure sealants.~~

24  
25  
26  
27           ~~(2) The program director/coordinator or a dental faculty member shall be responsible for selecting extern clinical sites and evaluating student competence in performing procedures both before and after the clinical assignment.~~

28  
29  
30  
31           ~~(3) Objective evaluation criteria shall be used by the program faculty and clinic personnel.~~

32  
33  
34           ~~(4) Dentists who intend to provide extramural clinical practices shall be oriented by the program director/coordinator or a dental faculty member prior to the student assignment. Orientation shall include the objectives of the course, the preparation the student has had for the clinical assignment, and a review of procedures and criteria to be used by the dentist in evaluating the student during the assignment.~~

35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40           ~~(5) There shall be a written contract of affiliation with each extramural clinical facility utilized by the program. Such contract shall describe the settings in which the clinical training will be received, affirm that the clinical facility has the necessary equipment and armamentarium appropriate for the procedures to be performed, and affirm that such equipment and armamentarium are in safe operating condition.~~

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1  
2 ~~(i) Evaluation and Examination.~~

3  
4 ~~(1) Upon completion of the course, each student shall be able to:~~

5  
6 ~~(A) Identify the major characteristics of oral anatomy, histology, physiology, oral~~  
7 ~~pathology, normal/abnormal anatomical and physiological tooth descriptions,~~  
8 ~~morphology and microbiology as they relate to pit and fissure application.~~

9  
10 ~~(B) Explain the procedure to patients.~~

11  
12 ~~(C) Recognize decalcification, caries and fracture lines.~~

13  
14 ~~(D) Identify the indications and contraindications for sealants.~~

15  
16 ~~(E) Identify the characteristics of self-curing and light-cured sealant material.~~

17  
18 ~~(F) Define the appropriate patient selection factors and indication factors for~~  
19 ~~sealant application.~~

20  
21 ~~(G) Utilize proper armamentaria in an organized sequence.~~

22  
23 ~~(H) Maintain appropriate moisture control protocol before and during~~  
24 ~~application of etchant and sealant material.~~

25  
26 ~~(I) Demonstrate the proper technique for teeth preparation prior to etching.~~

27  
28 ~~(J) Select and dispense the proper amount of etchant and sealant material.~~

29  
30 ~~(K) Demonstrate the proper techniques for application of the etchant and~~  
31 ~~sealant material.~~

32  
33 ~~(L) Implement problem-solving techniques associated with pit and fissure~~  
34 ~~sealants.~~

35  
36 ~~(M) Evaluate the etchant and sealant placement techniques according to~~  
37 ~~appropriate criteria.~~

38  
39 ~~(N) Check the occlusion and proximal contact for appropriate placement~~  
40 ~~techniques.~~

41  
42 ~~(O) Adjust occlusion and evaluate or correct proximal areas(s) when indicated.~~

43  
44 ~~(P) Maintain aseptic techniques including disposal of contaminated material.~~

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1  
2 ~~(2) Each student shall pass a written examination which reflects the entire curriculum~~  
3 ~~content.~~

4  
5 ~~(3) Each student shall pass a clinical examination in which the student successfully~~  
6 ~~completes the application of pit and fissure sealants on two of the four clinical patients~~  
7 ~~required for clinical instruction. The examination shall include teeth in all four~~  
8 ~~quadrants.~~

9  
10 Note: Authority cited: Section 1614, Business and Professions Code. Reference: Sections 1754  
11 and 1777, Business and Professions Code.

12  
13 **§ 1070.4. Approval of Coronal Polishing Courses.**

14  
15 (a) A course in the performance of coronal polishing procedures is one that has as its primary  
16 purpose providing theory and clinical application in plaque and stain removal techniques from  
17 supragingival tooth surfaces. A single standard of care shall be maintained, and the board shall  
18 approve and continue to approve only programmatic curricula and stand-alone courses which  
19 continuously maintain a high-quality standard of instruction.

20  
21 (b) A coronal polishing course provider applying for initial approval shall submit an application  
22 for approval, hereby incorporated by reference (insert date), accompanied by the designated,  
23 non-refundable fee as defined in CCR Section 1022. Consistent with CCR Section 1070, the board  
24 may approve or deny approval after evaluation of all components of the course have been  
25 performed.

26  
27 (c) Continuation of approval will be contingent upon continued compliance with CCR Sections  
28 1070, 1070.1 and all requirements as required herein.

29  
30 (d) **General Provisions:** Adequate provisions for the supervision and operation of the course shall  
31 be made in compliance with this Article and the following:

32  
33 (1) Unless otherwise incorporated in a board-approved registered dental assisting  
34 program, providers shall require evidence that all course pre-requisites have been met  
35 prior to acceptance of the participant to include current certification in basic life support,  
36 completion of an 8-hour board-approved course in infection control, and a 2-hour board-  
37 approved course in dental assisting jurisprudence.

38  
39 (2) When instruction is incorporated in a registered dental assisting program, students  
40 shall have completed instruction in infection control, basic chairside skills, anatomy, tooth  
41 morphology and dental materials and shall have obtained certification in basic life  
42 support, as defined herein, prior to the start of instruction in coronal polish.

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1       (3) The requirements for the quantity, qualifications and responsibilities of the course  
2       director and all faculty or instructional staff, as defined in CCR Section 1070 and 1070.1,  
3       shall be adhered to at all times.

4  
5       (4) Dental assisting programs and stand-alone courses teaching coronal polish shall not  
6       be required to employ a dentist for the purposes of oversight during pre-clinical or clinical  
7       instruction. Each clinical patient approved for coronal polishing shall be deemed calculus  
8       free by faculty of the course or program prior to clinical performances by the student.

9  
10       (5) Additionally, all patient's or their guardian shall complete a health history form with  
11       consent acknowledging the procedure is being performed by a student of the course or  
12       program. Such documentation shall be maintained in the student records.

13  
14       **(e) Facilities and Equipment:**

15  
16       (1) Adequate supplies, materials and provisions for instruction in Coronal Polishing shall  
17       be provided in compliance with the requirements of CCR Section 1070.

18  
19       **(f) Course Duration:** A course in coronal polishing shall be of sufficient duration, but in no event  
20       less than 12 hours including at least 4 hours of didactic instruction, at least 4 hours of laboratory  
21       instruction, and at least 4 hours of supervised clinical instruction for the student to obtain  
22       applicable theory in didactic instruction, laboratory instruction, and clinical experience to achieve  
23       minimum competence.

24  
25       **(g) Course Curriculum and Examination:**

26  
27       (1) A detailed course outline shall be established and maintained consistent with the  
28       requirements of CCR Section 1070 and shall be provided to students prior to the start of  
29       instruction.

30  
31       (2) General course objectives and specific instructional unit objectives shall be stated in  
32       writing and shall include theoretical aspects of each subject as well as practical  
33       application. The theoretical aspects of the course shall provide the content necessary for  
34       students to make judgments regarding coronal polishing.

35  
36       (3) Objective evaluation criteria shall be used for measuring student progress toward  
37       attainment of specific course objectives. Students shall be provided with specific  
38       performance objectives and the evaluation criteria that will be used for all aspects of the  
39       curriculum.

40  
41       (4) Each student shall pass a written examination which reflects the curriculum content.

42  
43       (5) Each student shall pass a clinical examination.

44

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 (h) Didactic Instruction: Areas of instruction shall include the following as they relate to coronal  
2 polishing:

3  
4 (1) Coronal Polishing Basics:

5 (A) Legal requirements

6 (B) Description and goals of coronal polishing

7 (C) Indications and contraindications of coronal polishing

8 (D) Criteria for an acceptable coronal polish

9  
10 (2) Principles of plaque and stain formation:

11 (A) Clinical description of plaque, intrinsic and extrinsic stains, and calculus

12 (B) Etiology of plaque and stain

13 (C) Clinical description of teeth that have been properly polished and are free of  
14 stain

15 (D) Tooth morphology and anatomy of the oral cavity as they relate to polishing  
16 techniques and to retention of plaque and stain

17 (3) Polishing materials:

18 (A) Polishing agent(s) composition, storage and handling

19 (B) Abrasive material(s) composition, storage, and handling, and factors which  
20 affect rate of abrasion

21 (C) Disclosing agent composition, storage and handling

22 (D) Armamentaria for disclosing and polishing techniques

23 (E) Contraindications for disclosing and polishing techniques

24  
25 (4) Principals of tooth polishing:

26 (A) Clinical application of disclosing before and after a coronal polish

27 (B) Instrument grasps and fulcrum techniques

28 (C) Purpose and techniques of the mouth mirror for indirect vision and retraction

29 (D) Characteristics, manipulation and care of dental handpieces, mechanical  
30 devices and rotary devices used when performing a coronal polish procedure

31 (E) Introduction of advanced technologies in coronal polishing including the use  
32 of air polishing devices and selective polishing procedures

33 (F) Use of traditional and contemporary polishing techniques, including selective  
34 polishing

35 (G) Techniques for coronal polishing of adults and children

36 (H) Procedures for cleaning fixed and removable prosthesis and orthodontic  
37 appliances

38 (I) Disclosing and polishing evaluation criteria

39  
40 (5) Infection control protocols

41  
42 (6) OSHA Bloodborne Pathogens Standards

43

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1           (A) Successful completion of a comprehensive written examination to include all  
2           areas of didactic instruction shall occur prior to pre-clinical instruction and  
3           experiences.

4  
5 **(i) Laboratory, Simulated-Clinical and Clinical Instruction:**

6  
7           (1) Providers shall adhere to student/teacher ratios as defined in CCR Section 1070.1 at  
8           all times during laboratory, simulated clinical and clinical instruction.

9  
10          (2) Students shall be provided with established written competencies identifying specific  
11          objective evaluation criteria and performance objectives for all evaluated experiences.  
12          An experience has been successfully completed only if each procedure meets or exceeds  
13          all stated performance criteria.

14  
15          (3) Upon completion of all didactic instruction, students shall complete the following  
16          competency evaluated experiences:

17  
18                (A) Laboratory experiences which shall be conducted on a fully articulated and  
19                mounted typodont. Sufficient time shall be available for students to  
20                demonstrate minimum competency performing two (2) laboratory experiences;  
21                or

22  
23                (B) Simulated clinical experiences which shall be conducted on a simulator or  
24                mannequin device. Sufficient time shall be available for students to demonstrate  
25                minimum competency performing two (2) simulated clinical experiences.

26  
27                (C) Clinical experiences which shall be conducted on three (3) patients with two  
28                (2) of the three (3) patients used for the clinical examination. The clinical  
29                experiences shall include one performance utilizing selective polishing technique  
30                and one performance utilizing full mouth polishing technique. Patient selection  
31                and evaluation shall follow all stated criteria.

32  
33                        (i) Each clinical patient shall have, at minimum, a mixed dentition or at  
34                        least 2/3 of their natural teeth in place. Careful consideration shall be  
35                        given to utilizing selective polishing techniques on clinical patients  
36                        possessing implants, orthodontic bands and brackets, or removable  
37                        appliances.

38  
39 **(i) Upon completion of the course, each student shall be able to:**

40           (1) Identify the major characteristics of oral anatomy, histology, physiology, oral  
41           pathology, normal/abnormal anatomical and physiological tooth descriptions,  
42           morphology and microbiology as they relate to coronal polishing.

43           (2) Explain the procedure to patients.

44           (3) Recognize decalcification and mottled enamel.

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

- 1        (4) Identify plaque, calculus and stain formation within the oral cavity.
- 2        (5) Identify the indications and contraindications for disclosing and selective polishing.
- 3        (6) Recognize advanced technologies in coronal polishing including the use of air
- 4        polishing devices and selective polishing procedures
- 5        (7) Utilize proper armamentaria in an organized sequence for disclosing and polishing.
- 6        (8) Perform plaque disclosure.
- 7        (9) Demonstrate the proper instrument grasp, fulcrum position, and cheek/tongue
- 8        retraction.
- 9        (10) Utilize both full mouth and selective polishing techniques
- 10       (11) Demonstrate proper polishing techniques using traditional and contemporary
- 11       mechanical devices
- 12       (12) Demonstrate the use of floss, tape, and abrasive strips when appropriate.
- 13       (13) Demonstrate techniques for cleaning fixed and removal prosthesis and orthodontic
- 14       appliances.
- 15       (14) Maintain aseptic techniques including disposal of contaminated material.

16  
17 (k) **Certificate of Completion.** Upon successful completion of the course, students shall receive a  
18 certificate consistent with the requirements defined in CCR Section 1070.

19  
20 (l) **Notice of Compliance.** To maintain approval, courses approved prior to the effective date of  
21 these regulations shall submit to the Board a completed “Notice of Compliance with New  
22 Requirements for Coronal Polish Certificate Courses” (insert date), hereby incorporated by  
23 reference, within ninety (90) days of the effective date of these regulations.

24  
25 ~~The following minimum criteria shall be met for a course in coronal polishing to secure and~~  
26 ~~maintain approval by the Board.~~

27  
28 ~~(a) Educational Setting. The course shall be established at the post-secondary educational level.~~

29  
30 ~~(b) Prerequisites. Each student shall possess the necessary requirements for application for RDA~~  
31 ~~licensure or currently possess an RDA license. Each student shall satisfactorily demonstrate to~~  
32 ~~the instructor clinical competency in infection control requirements prior to clinical instruction~~  
33 ~~in coronal polishing.~~

34  
35 ~~(c) Administration/Faculty. Adequate provision for the supervision and operation of the course~~  
36 ~~shall be made.~~

37  
38 ~~(1) The course director and each faculty member shall possess a valid, active, and~~  
39 ~~current RDAEF, RDH, RDHEF, RDHAP, or dentist license issued by the Board, or an RDA~~  
40 ~~license issued by the Board if the person has completed a board approved course in~~  
41 ~~coronal polishing. All faculty shall have been licensed for a minimum of two years. All~~  
42 ~~faculty shall have the education, background, and occupational experience and/or~~  
43 ~~teaching expertise necessary to teach, place, and evaluate coronal polishing. All faculty~~

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1       ~~responsible for clinical evaluation shall have completed a two hour methodology course~~  
2       ~~in clinical evaluation.~~

3  
4       ~~(2) The course director shall have the education, background, and occupational~~  
5       ~~experience necessary to understand and fulfill the course goals. He/she shall actively~~  
6       ~~participate in and be responsible for the day to day administration of the course~~  
7       ~~including the following:~~

8  
9               ~~(A) Providing guidance of didactic, laboratory and clinical assignments.~~

10  
11              ~~(B) Maintaining for a period of not less than 5 years:~~

12                      ~~i. Copies of curricula, course outlines, objectives, and grading criteria.~~

13                      ~~ii. Copies of faculty credentials, licenses, and certifications.~~

14                      ~~iii. Individual student records, including those necessary to establish~~  
15                      ~~satisfactory completion of the course.~~

16  
17               ~~(C) Informing the board of any changes to the course content, physical facilities,~~  
18               ~~and/or faculty, within 10 days of such changes.~~

19  
20  
21  
22  
23       ~~(d) Length of Course. The program shall be of sufficient duration for the student to develop~~  
24       ~~minimum competence in coronal polishing, but shall in no event be less than 12 clock hours,~~  
25       ~~including at least 4 hours of didactic training, at least 4 hours of laboratory training, and at least~~  
26       ~~4 hours of clinical training.~~

27  
28       ~~(e) Evidence of Completion. A certificate or other evidence of completion shall be issued to~~  
29       ~~each student who successfully completes the course.~~

30  
31       ~~(f) Facilities and Resources. Facilities and class scheduling shall provide each student with~~  
32       ~~sufficient opportunity, with instructor supervision, to develop minimum competency in coronal~~  
33       ~~polishing. Such facilities shall include safe, adequate and educationally conducive:~~

34  
35               ~~(1) Lecture classrooms. Classroom size and equipment shall accommodate the number~~  
36               ~~of students enrolled.~~

37  
38               ~~(2) Operatories. Operatories shall be sufficient in number to allow a ratio of at least one~~  
39               ~~operatory for every six students at any one time.~~

40  
41                      ~~(A) Each operatory shall replicate a modern dental office containing functional~~  
42                      ~~equipment including: a power operated chair for treating patients in a supine~~  
43                      ~~position; operator and assistant stools; air-water syringe; adjustable light; oral~~  
44                      ~~evacuation equipment; work surface; hand washing sink; slow speed handpiece,~~



**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1           ~~and all other armamentarium required to instruct in the performance of coronal~~  
2           ~~polishing.~~

3  
4           ~~(B) Each operatory shall be of sufficient size to accommodate a student, an~~  
5           ~~instructor, and a patient at one time.~~

6  
7           ~~(3) Laboratories. The location and number of general use equipment shall assure that~~  
8           ~~each student has the access necessary to develop minimum competency in coronal~~  
9           ~~polishing. Protective eyewear is required for each student.~~

10  
11           ~~(4) Infection Control. The program shall establish written clinical and laboratory~~  
12           ~~protocols to ensure adequate asepsis, infection and hazard control, and disposal of~~  
13           ~~hazardous wastes, which shall comply with the board's regulations and other Federal,~~  
14           ~~State, and local requirements. The program shall provide such protocols to all students,~~  
15           ~~faculty, and appropriate staff to assure compliance with such protocols. Adequate space~~  
16           ~~shall be provided for preparing and sterilizing all armamentarium.~~

17  
18           ~~(5) Emergency Materials/Basic Life Support.~~

19  
20           ~~(A) A written policy on managing emergency situations shall be made available~~  
21           ~~to all students, faculty, and staff.~~

22  
23           ~~(B) All students, faculty, and staff involved in the direct provision of patient care~~  
24           ~~shall be certified in basic life support procedures, including cardiopulmonary~~  
25           ~~resuscitation. Re-certification intervals may not exceed two years. The program~~  
26           ~~shall document, monitor, and ensure compliance by such students, faculty, and~~  
27           ~~staff.~~

28  
29           ~~(g) Program Content.~~

30  
31           ~~(1) Sufficient time shall be available for all students to obtain laboratory and clinical~~  
32           ~~experience to achieve minimum competence in the various protocols used in the~~  
33           ~~performance of coronal polishing.~~

34  
35           ~~(2) A detailed course outline shall be provided to the board which clearly states~~  
36           ~~curriculum subject matter and specific instruction hours in the individual areas of~~  
37           ~~didactic, laboratory, and clinical instruction.~~

38  
39           ~~(3) General program objectives and specific instructional unit objectives shall be stated~~  
40           ~~in writing, and shall include theoretical aspects of each subject as well as practical~~  
41           ~~application. The theoretical aspects of the program shall provide the content necessary~~  
42           ~~for students to make judgments regarding the performance of coronal polishing. The~~  
43           ~~course shall assure that students who successfully complete the course can perform~~  
44           ~~coronal polishing with minimum competence.~~

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1  
2 ~~(4) Objective evaluation criteria shall be used for measuring student progress toward~~  
3 ~~attainment of specific course objectives. Students shall be provided with specific unit~~  
4 ~~objectives and the evaluation criteria that will be used for all aspects of the curriculum~~  
5 ~~including written and practical examinations. The program shall establish a standard of~~  
6 ~~performance that states the minimum number of satisfactory performances that are~~  
7 ~~required for each procedure.~~

8  
9 ~~(5) Areas of instruction shall include at least the following as they relate to coronal~~  
10 ~~polishing:~~

11  
12 ~~(A) Coronal Polishing Basics~~

13  
14 ~~i. Legal requirements~~

15  
16 ~~ii. Description and goals of coronal polishing~~

17  
18 ~~iii. Indications and contraindications of coronal polishing~~

19  
20 ~~iv. Criteria for an acceptable coronal polish~~

21  
22 ~~(B) Principles of plaque and stain formation~~

23  
24 ~~i. Clinical description of plaque, intrinsic and extrinsic stains, and calculus~~

25  
26 ~~ii. Etiology of plaque and stain~~

27  
28 ~~iii. Clinical description of teeth that have been properly polished and are~~  
29 ~~free of stain.~~

30  
31 ~~iv. Tooth morphology and anatomy of the oral cavity as they relate to~~  
32 ~~polishing techniques and to retention of plaque and stain~~

33  
34 ~~(C) Polishing materials~~

35  
36 ~~i. Polishing agent composition, storage and handling~~

37  
38 ~~ii. Abrasive material composition, storage, and handling, and factors~~  
39 ~~which affect rate of abrasion~~

40  
41 ~~iii. Disclosing agent composition, storage and handling.~~

42  
43 ~~iv. Armamentaria for disclosing and polishing techniques.~~

44

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

~~v. Contraindications for disclosing and polishing techniques.~~

~~(D) Principals of tooth polishing~~

~~i. Clinical application of disclosing before and after a coronal polish.~~

~~ii. Instrument grasps and fulcrum techniques~~

~~iii. Purpose and techniques of the mouth mirror for indirect vision and retraction.~~

~~iv. Characteristics, manipulation and care of dental handpieces when performing a coronal polish.~~

~~v. Pre-medication requirements for the compromised patient.~~

~~vi. Use of adjunct materials for stain removal and polishing techniques~~

~~vii. Techniques for coronal polishing of adults and children.~~

~~viii. Procedures for cleaning fixed and removable prosthesis and orthodontic appliances.~~

~~ix. Disclosing and polishing evaluation criteria.~~

~~(E) Infection control protocols~~

~~(6) There shall be no more than 6 students per instructor during laboratory instruction. Sufficient time shall be available for all students to obtain laboratory experience to achieve minimum competence in the performance of coronal polishing prior to the performance of procedures on patients.~~

~~(7) Clinical instruction shall be of sufficient duration to allow the procedures to be performed to clinical proficiency, which may include externship instruction as provided in subdivision (h). There shall be no more than 6 students per instructor during clinical instruction. Clinical instruction shall include clinical experience on at least three patients, with two of the three patients used for the clinical examination.~~

~~(h) Externship Instruction.~~

~~(1) If an extramural clinical facility is utilized for clinical instruction as provided in subdivision (g)(7), students shall, as part of an organized program of instruction, be provided with planned, supervised clinical instruction in the application of coronal polishing.~~

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1  
2 ~~(2) The program director/coordinator or a dental faculty member shall be responsible~~  
3 ~~for selecting extern clinical sites and evaluating student competence in performing~~  
4 ~~procedures both before and after the clinical assignment.~~

5  
6 ~~(3) Objective evaluation criteria shall be used by the program faculty and clinic~~  
7 ~~personnel.~~

8  
9 ~~(4) Dentists who intend to provide extramural clinical practices shall be oriented by the~~  
10 ~~program director/coordinator or a dental faculty member prior to the student~~  
11 ~~assignment. Orientation shall include the objectives of the course, the preparation the~~  
12 ~~student has had for the clinical assignment, and a review of procedures and criteria to~~  
13 ~~be used by the dentist in evaluating the student during the assignment.~~

14  
15 ~~(5) There shall be a written contract of affiliation with each extramural clinical facility~~  
16 ~~utilized by the program. Such contract shall describe the settings in which the clinical~~  
17 ~~training will be received, affirm that the clinical facility has the necessary equipment and~~  
18 ~~armamentarium appropriate for the procedures to be performed, and affirm that such~~  
19 ~~equipment and armamentarium are in safe operating condition.~~

20  
21 ~~(i) Evaluation and Examination.~~

22  
23 ~~(1) Upon completion of the course, each student shall be able to:~~

24  
25 ~~(A) Identify the major characteristics of oral anatomy, histology, physiology, oral~~  
26 ~~pathology, normal/abnormal anatomical and physiological tooth descriptions,~~  
27 ~~morphology and microbiology as they relate to coronal polishing.~~

28  
29 ~~(B) Explain the procedure to patients.~~

30  
31 ~~(C) Recognize decalcification and mottled enamel.~~

32  
33 ~~(D) Identify plaque, calculus and stain formation within the oral cavity.~~

34  
35 ~~(E) Identify the indications and contraindications for disclosing and coronal~~  
36 ~~polishing.~~

37  
38 ~~(F) Identify the pre medications for the compromised patient.~~

39  
40 ~~(G) Utilize proper armamentaria in an organized sequence for disclosing and~~  
41 ~~polishing.~~

42  
43 ~~(H) Perform plaque disclosure.~~  
44

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 ~~(I) Demonstrate the proper instrument grasp, fulcrum position, and~~  
2 ~~cheek/tongue retraction.~~

3  
4 ~~(J) Select and dispense the proper amount of polishing agent.~~

5  
6 ~~(K) Demonstrate proper polishing techniques using appropriate cup adaptation,~~  
7 ~~stroke, and handpiece use.~~

8  
9 ~~(L) Demonstrate the use of floss, tape, and abrasive strips when appropriate.~~

10  
11 ~~(M) Demonstrate techniques for cleaning fixed and removal prosthesis and~~  
12 ~~orthodontic appliances.~~

13  
14 ~~(N) Maintain aseptic techniques including disposal of contaminated material.~~

15  
16 ~~(2) Each student shall pass a written examination which reflects the entire curriculum~~  
17 ~~content.~~

18  
19 ~~(3) Each student shall pass a clinical examination in which the student successfully~~  
20 ~~completes coronal polishing on two of the three clinical patients required for clinical~~  
21 ~~instruction.~~

22  
23 Note: Authority cited: Section 1614, Business and Professions Code. Reference: Sections 1645.1  
24 and 1753.5, Business and Professions Code.

25  
26 **§ 1070.5. Approval of Ultrasonic Scaling Courses.**

27  
28 (a) A course in the performance of ultrasonic scaling for removal of orthodontic cement is one  
29 that has as its primary purpose providing theory and clinical application in the mechanical  
30 removal of orthodontic cement from around bands and brackets utilized in orthodontic  
31 treatment. A single standard of care shall be maintained, and the board shall approve and  
32 continue to approve only programmatic curricula and stand-alone courses which continuously  
33 maintain a high-quality standard of instruction.

34  
35 (b) A course provider applying for initial approval shall submit an application for approval, hereby  
36 incorporated by reference (insert date), accompanied by the designated, non-refundable fee as  
37 defined in CCR Section 1022. Consistent with CCR Section 1070, the board may approve or deny  
38 approval after evaluation of all components of the course have been performed.

39  
40 (c) Continuation of approval will be contingent upon continued compliance with CCR Sections  
41 1070, 1070.1 and all requirements as required herein.

42  
43 (d) **General Provisions:** Adequate provisions for the supervision and operation of the course shall  
44 be made in compliance with this Article and the following:

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1  
2 (1) Each student in a stand-alone course shall possess an active, valid and current RDA  
3 license as a registered dental assistant or an Orthodontic Assistant Permit. Courses shall  
4 establish and demonstrate to the board the protocols necessary to ensure students have  
5 met licensure as a prerequisite prior to the start of instruction. Students enrolled in a  
6 board-approved Orthodontic Assistant Permit Course are exempt from this prerequisite.  
7

8 (2) Registered dental assisting programs incorporating ultrasonic scaling as a component  
9 of a total program of instruction shall ensure all students have completed instruction in  
10 infection control and basic chairside skills prior to instruction in orthodontic procedures  
11 involving ultrasonic scaling for cement removal.  
12

13 (3) The requirements for the quantity, qualifications and responsibilities of the course  
14 director and all faculty or instructional staff, as defined in CCR Sections 1070 and 1070.1,  
15 shall be adhered to at all times.  
16

17 **(e) Facilities and Equipment:**  
18

19 (1) Adequate supplies, materials and provisions for instruction in ultrasonic scaling for  
20 cement removal shall be provided in compliance with the requirements of CCR Section  
21 1070.  
22

23 (2) There shall be a sufficient number of safe, adequate, and educationally conducive  
24 lecture classrooms and operatories in compliance with the requirements of CCR Section  
25 1070. Adequate, cleaning, disinfecting, and sterilizing facilities shall be provided.  
26

27 (3) All disinfection and sterilization procedures specified in CCR Section 1005 shall be  
28 incorporated in the course content and followed during all laboratory experiences.  
29

30 **(f) Course Duration:** As part of an organized course of instruction, sufficient time shall be  
31 available for all students to achieve minimum competence in the various protocols used during  
32 ultrasonic scaling for orthodontic cement removal. The course shall, however, be no less than four  
33 (4) hours in length consisting of a combination of didactic and laboratory instruction designed for  
34 the student to develop minimum competency in all aspects of the subject area.  
35

36 **(g) Course Curriculum and Examination:**  
37

38 (1) A detailed course outline shall be established and maintained consistent with the  
39 requirements of CCR Section 1070 and shall be provided to students prior to the start of  
40 instruction.  
41

42 (2) General course objectives and specific instructional unit objectives shall be stated in  
43 writing and shall include theoretical aspects of each subject as well as practical

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 application. The theoretical aspects of the course shall provide the content necessary for  
2 students to make judgments regarding ultrasonic scaling for orthodontic procedures.

3  
4 (3) Objective evaluation criteria shall be used for measuring student progress toward  
5 attainment of specific course objectives. Students shall be provided with specific  
6 performance objectives and the evaluation criteria that will be used for all aspects of the  
7 curriculum.

8  
9 (4) Each student shall pass a written examination which reflects the curriculum content.

10  
11 (h) **Didactic Instruction:** Areas of instruction shall include, at a minimum, the following as they  
12 relate to ultrasonic scaling for cement removal:

13  
14 (1) Ultrasonic scaling basics:

15 (A) Legal requirements.

16 (B) Description and goals of ultrasonic scaling.

17 (C) Indications and contraindications of using an ultrasonic scaler as it relates to  
18 methods of cement removal.

19 (D) Criteria for acceptable cement removal from orthodontically banded teeth.

20  
21 (2) Tooth anatomy as it relates to the use and technique of an ultrasonic scaler in cement  
22 removal of orthodontically banded teeth.

23  
24 (3) Armamentarium and equipment use and care.

25  
26 (4) Principles of cement removal from orthodontically banded teeth.

27  
28 (A) Characteristics of ultrasonic scaler units and tips for cement removal.

29  
30 (B) Instrument grasps and fulcrum techniques.

31  
32 (C) Purpose and techniques of the mouth mirror for indirect vision and retraction.

33  
34 (D) Characteristics, manipulation and care of ultrasonic scaler unit when removing  
35 excess cement from orthodontically banded teeth.

36  
37 (E) Effects of ultrasonic scalers on hard and soft tissue including root damage, enamel  
38 damage, thermal damage, and soft tissue damage.

39  
40 (F) Patient and operator safety including systemic medical complications and  
41 managing patients with pacemakers.

42  
43 (G) Use of adjunct material for removal of excess cement from orthodontically  
44 banded teeth.

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1  
2 (H) Techniques for removal of excess cement from orthodontically banded teeth on a  
3 banded typodont.

4  
5 (I) Evaluation criteria for removal of excess cement by an ultrasonic scaler on a  
6 banded typodont.

7  
8 **(i) Laboratory, Simulated-Clinical and Clinical Instruction:**

9  
10 (1) Providers shall adhere to student/teacher ratios as defined in 1070.1 at all times  
11 during laboratory instruction.

12  
13 (2) Students shall be provided with established written competencies identifying specific  
14 objective evaluation criteria and performance objectives for all evaluated experiences.  
15 An experience has been successfully completed only if each procedure meets or exceeds  
16 all stated performance criteria.

17  
18  
19 **(i) Course Completion:** Upon completion of the course, each student shall be able to:

20  
21 (1) Identify the major characteristics of oral anatomy, histology, physiology, oral  
22 pathology, normal/abnormal anatomical and physiological tooth descriptions,  
23 morphology and microbiology as they relate to the use of an ultrasonic scaler in the  
24 removal of cement from orthodontic bands.

25  
26 (2) Describe the necessary aspects of pre-operative instructions to patients.

27  
28 (3) Recognize loose appliances.

29  
30 (4) Recognize decalcification and mottled enamel.

31  
32 (5) Identify the indications and contraindications of using an ultrasonic scaler as it  
33 relates to other methods of cement removal.

34  
35 (6) Identify pre-medications for the compromised patient.

36  
37 (7) Utilize proper armamentaria in an organized sequence for the use of an ultrasonic  
38 scaler in cement removal on an orthodontically banded typodont.

39  
40 (8) Demonstrate, on an orthodontically banded typodont, the proper instrument grasp,  
41 fulcrum position, and cheek/tongue retraction.



**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1       (9) Demonstrate the proper techniques for removal of cement from teeth under  
2       orthodontic treatment without causing damage to hard or soft tissues, removing  
3       cement from underneath appliances, or loosening appliances.

4  
5       (10) Maintain aseptic techniques including disposal of contaminated materials.

6  
7       (11) Each student shall pass a written examination which reflects the entire curriculum  
8       content.

9  
10       (12) Each student shall pass a laboratory examination on two orthodontically banded  
11       typodonts which represent all four quadrants which have been banded using  
12       cementation product(s) easily visible to the operator.

13  
14       (k) **Certificate of Completion.** Upon successful completion of the course, students shall receive a  
15       certificate consistent with the requirements defined in CCR Section 1070.

16  
17       (l) **Notice of Compliance.** To maintain approval, courses approved prior to the effective date of  
18       these regulations shall submit to the Board a completed “Notice of Compliance with New  
19       Requirements for Ultrasonic Scaling for Cement Removal Certificate Courses” (insert date), hereby  
20       incorporated by reference, within ninety (90) days of the effective date of these regulations.

21  
22       ~~The following minimum criteria shall be met for a course in the removal of excess cement from~~  
23       ~~coronal surfaces of teeth under orthodontic treatment by means of an ultrasonic scaler,~~  
24       ~~hereinafter referred to as “ultrasonic scaling”, to secure and maintain approval by the Board.~~

25  
26       ~~(a) Educational Setting. The course shall be established at the post-secondary educational level.~~

27  
28       ~~(b) Prerequisites. Each student shall possess the necessary requirements for application for RDA~~  
29       ~~licensure or currently possess an RDA license.~~

30  
31       ~~(c) Administration/Faculty. Adequate provision for the supervision and operation of the course~~  
32       ~~shall be made.~~

33  
34       ~~(1) The course director and each faculty member shall possess a valid, active, and~~  
35       ~~current RDAEF, RDH, RDHEF, RDHAP, or dentist license issued by the Board, or an RDA~~  
36       ~~license issued by the Board if the person has completed a board approved course in~~  
37       ~~ultrasonic scaling. All faculty shall have been licensed for a minimum of two years. All~~  
38       ~~faculty shall have the education, background, and occupational experience and/or~~  
39       ~~teaching expertise necessary to teach and evaluate ultrasonic scaling.~~

40  
41       ~~(2) The course director shall have the education, background, and occupational~~  
42       ~~experience necessary to understand and fulfill the course goals. He/she shall actively~~  
43       ~~participate in and be responsible for the day-to-day administration of the course~~  
44       ~~including the following:~~

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1  
2           ~~(A) Providing guidance of didactic and laboratory assignments.~~

3  
4           ~~(B) Maintaining for a period of not less than 5 years:~~

5  
6                   ~~(i) Copies of curricula, course outlines, objectives, and grading criteria.~~

7  
8                   ~~(ii) Copies of faculty credentials, licenses, and certifications.~~

9  
10                   ~~(iii) Individual student records, including those necessary to establish~~  
11                   ~~satisfactory completion of the course.~~

12  
13           ~~(C) Informing the board of any changes to the course content, physical facilities,~~  
14           ~~and/or faculty, within 10 days of such changes.~~

15  
16 ~~(d) Length of Course. The program shall be of sufficient duration for the student to develop~~  
17 ~~minimum competence in ultrasonic scaling, but shall in no event be less than 4 clock hours,~~  
18 ~~including at least 2 hours of laboratory training.~~

19  
20 ~~(e) Evidence of Completion. A certificate or other evidence of completion shall be issued to~~  
21 ~~each student who successfully completes the course.~~

22  
23 ~~(f) Facilities and Resources. Facilities and class scheduling shall provide each student with~~  
24 ~~sufficient opportunity, with instructor supervision, to develop minimum competency in~~  
25 ~~ultrasonic scaling. Such facilities shall include safe, adequate and educationally conducive:~~

26  
27           ~~(1) Lecture classrooms. Classroom size and equipment shall accommodate the number~~  
28           ~~of students enrolled.~~

29  
30           ~~(2) Operatories. Operatories shall be sufficient in number to allow a ratio of at least one~~  
31           ~~operatory for every six students at any one time.~~

32  
33                   ~~(A) Each operatory shall replicate a modern dental office containing functional~~  
34                   ~~equipment including: a power operated chair for treating patients in a supine~~  
35                   ~~position; operator and assistant stools; air water syringe; adjustable light; oral~~  
36                   ~~evacuation equipment; work surface, hand washing sink; and all other~~  
37                   ~~armamentarium required to instruct in the performance of ultrasonic scaling.~~

38  
39                   ~~(B) Each operatory shall be of sufficient size to accommodate a student and an~~  
40                   ~~instructor at one time.~~

41  
42           ~~(3) Laboratories. The location and number of general use equipment shall assure that~~  
43           ~~each student has the access necessary to develop minimum competency in ultrasonic~~  
44           ~~scaling. There shall be at least one ultrasonic unit and orthodontically banded typodont~~

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 ~~for every four students. This procedure shall be performed by an operator wearing~~  
2 ~~gloves, mask, and safety glasses.~~

3  
4 ~~(4) Infection Control. The program shall establish written laboratory protocols to ensure~~  
5 ~~adequate asepsis, infection and hazard control, and disposal of hazardous wastes, which~~  
6 ~~shall comply with the board's regulations and other Federal, State, and local~~  
7 ~~requirements. The program shall provide such protocols to all students, faculty, and~~  
8 ~~appropriate staff to assure compliance with such protocols. Adequate space and~~  
9 ~~equipment shall be provided for preparing and sterilizing all armamentarium.~~

10  
11 ~~(g) Program Content.~~

12  
13 ~~(1) Sufficient time shall be available for all students to obtain laboratory experience to~~  
14 ~~achieve minimum~~  
15 ~~competence in the various protocols used in the performance of ultrasonic scaling.~~

16  
17 ~~(2) A detailed course outline shall be provided to the board which clearly states~~  
18 ~~curriculum subject matter and specific instruction hours in the individual areas of~~  
19 ~~didactic and laboratory instruction and practical examination evaluation criteria.~~

20  
21 ~~(3) General program objectives and specific instructional unit objectives shall be stated~~  
22 ~~in writing, and shall include theoretical aspects of each subject as well as practical~~  
23 ~~application. The theoretical aspects of the program shall provide the content necessary~~  
24 ~~for students to make judgments regarding the performance of ultrasonic scaling. The~~  
25 ~~course shall assure that students who successfully complete the course can perform~~  
26 ~~ultrasonic scaling with minimum competence.~~

27  
28 ~~(4) Objective evaluation criteria shall be used for measuring student progress toward~~  
29 ~~attainment of specific course objectives. Students shall be provided with specific unit~~  
30 ~~objectives and the evaluation criteria that will be used for all aspects of the curriculum~~  
31 ~~including written and practical examinations. The program shall establish a standard of~~  
32 ~~performance that states the minimum number of satisfactory performances that are~~  
33 ~~required for each procedure.~~

34  
35 ~~(5) Areas of instruction shall include at least the following as they relate to ultrasonic~~  
36 ~~scaling:~~

37  
38 ~~(A) Ultrasonic Scaling Basics~~

39  
40 ~~i. Legal requirements;~~

41  
42 ~~ii. Description and goals of ultrasonic scaling;~~

43

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 ~~iii. Indications and contraindication of using an ultrasonic scaler as it~~  
2 ~~relates to other methods of cement removal;~~

3  
4 ~~iv. Criteria for acceptable cement removal from orthodontically banded~~  
5 ~~teeth.~~

6  
7 ~~(B) Tooth morphology and anatomy of the oral cavity as they relate to the use of~~  
8 ~~an ultrasonic scaler in cement removal of orthodontically banded teeth.~~

9  
10 ~~(C) Armamentarium and equipment use and care.~~

11  
12 ~~(D) Principles of cement removal from orthodontically banded teeth~~

13  
14 ~~i. Characteristics of ultrasonic scaler units and tips for cement removal;~~

15  
16 ~~ii. Instrument grasps and fulcrum techniques;~~

17  
18 ~~iii. Purpose and techniques of the mouth mirror for indirect vision and~~  
19 ~~retraction;~~

20  
21 ~~iv. Characteristics, manipulation and care of ultrasonic scaler unit when~~  
22 ~~removing excess cement from orthodontically banded teeth;~~

23  
24 ~~v. Effects of ultrasonic scalers on hard and soft tissue including root~~  
25 ~~damage, enamel damage, thermal damage, and soft tissue damage;~~

26  
27 ~~vi. Patient and operator safety including systemic medical complications~~  
28 ~~and managing patients with pacemakers;~~

29  
30 ~~vii. Use of adjunct material for removal of excess cement from~~  
31 ~~orthodontically banded teeth;~~

32  
33 ~~viii. Techniques for removal of excess cement from orthodontically~~  
34 ~~banded teeth on a banded typodont;~~

35  
36 ~~ix. Evaluation criteria for removal of excess cement by an ultrasonic scaler~~  
37 ~~on a banded typodont.~~

38  
39 ~~(E) Infection control protocols~~

40  
41 ~~(6) There shall be no more than six (6) students per instructor during laboratory~~  
42 ~~instruction. Laboratory experience will consist of practice on orthodontically banded~~  
43 ~~typodonts. Sufficient time shall be available for all students to obtain laboratory~~  
44 ~~experience to achieve minimum competence in the performance of ultrasonic scaling~~

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1       ~~prior to examination on two orthodontically banded typodonts for evaluation of clinical~~  
2       ~~competence.~~

3  
4       ~~(h) Extramural Instruction.~~

5  
6       ~~(1) If an extramural facility is utilized, students shall, as part of an organized program of~~  
7       ~~instruction, be provided with planned, supervised instruction in the removal of excess~~  
8       ~~cement from orthodontically banded teeth.~~

9  
10       ~~(2) The program director/coordinator or a dental faculty member shall be responsible~~  
11       ~~for selecting extramural sites and evaluating student competence in performing~~  
12       ~~procedures both before and after the extramural assignment.~~

13  
14       ~~(3) Objective evaluation criteria shall be used by the program faculty and extramural~~  
15       ~~personnel.~~

16  
17       ~~(4) Dentists who intend to provide extramural facilities shall be oriented by the program~~  
18       ~~director/coordinator or a dental faculty member prior to the student assignment.~~  
19       ~~Orientation shall include the objectives of the course, the preparation the student has~~  
20       ~~had for the clinical assignment, and a review of procedures and criteria to be used by~~  
21       ~~the dentist in evaluating the student during the assignment.~~

22  
23       ~~(5) There shall be a written contract of affiliation with each extramural facility utilized by~~  
24       ~~the program. Such contract shall describe the settings in which the instruction will be~~  
25       ~~received, affirm that the extramural facility has the necessary equipment and~~  
26       ~~armamentarium appropriate for the procedures to be performed, and affirm that such~~  
27       ~~equipment and armamentarium are in safe operating condition.~~

28  
29       ~~(i) Evaluation and Examination.~~

30  
31       ~~(1) Upon completion of the course, each student shall be able to:~~

32  
33               ~~(A) Identify the major characteristics of oral anatomy, histology, physiology, oral~~  
34               ~~pathology, normal/abnormal anatomical and physiological tooth descriptions,~~  
35               ~~morphology and microbiology as they relate to the use of an ultrasonic scaler in~~  
36               ~~the removal of cement from orthodontic bands.~~

37  
38               ~~(B) Describe the necessary aspects of pre-operative instructions to patients.~~

39  
40               ~~(C) Recognize loose appliances.~~

41  
42               ~~(D) Recognize decalcification and mottled enamel.~~  
43

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 ~~(E) Identify the indications and contraindications of using an ultrasonic scaler as~~  
2 ~~it relates to other methods of cement removal.~~

3  
4 ~~(F) Identify pre-mediations for the compromised patient.~~

5  
6 ~~(G) Utilize proper armamentaria in an organized sequence for the use of an~~  
7 ~~ultrasonic scaler in cement removal on an orthodontically banded typodont.~~

8  
9 ~~(H) Demonstrate, on an orthodontically banded typodont, the proper instrument~~  
10 ~~grasp, fulcrum position, and cheek/tongue retraction.~~

11  
12 ~~(I) Demonstrate the proper techniques for removal of cement from teeth under~~  
13 ~~orthodontic treatment without causing damage to hard or soft tissues, removing~~  
14 ~~cement from underneath appliances, or loosening appliances.~~

15  
16 ~~(J) Maintain aseptic techniques including disposal of contaminated materials.~~

17  
18 ~~(2) Each student shall pass a written examination which reflects the entire curriculum~~  
19 ~~content.~~

20  
21 ~~(3) Each student shall pass a laboratory examination on two orthodontically banded~~  
22 ~~typodonts which represent all four quadrants which have been banded using~~  
23 ~~cementation product(s) easily visible to the operator.~~

24  
25 Note: Authority cited: Section 1614, Business and Professions Code. Reference: Section 1754,  
26 Business and Professions Code.

27  
28  
29  
30  
31 **§ 1070.6. Approval of Infection Control Courses.**

32  
33 (a) A course in infection control for unlicensed dental assistants is one that has as its primary  
34 purpose providing theory and application in a clinical setting in infection control practices and  
35 principles consistent with CCR Section 1005, The Minimum Standards for Infection Control. A  
36 single standard of care shall be maintained, and the board shall approve only programmatic  
37 curricula and stand-alone courses which continuously maintain a high-quality standard of  
38 instruction.

39  
40 (b) A course provider applying for initial approval shall submit an application for approval, hereby  
41 incorporated by reference (insert date), accompanied by the designated, non-refundable fee as  
42 defined in CCR Section 1022. Consistent with CCR Section 1070, the board may approve or deny  
43 approval after evaluation of all components of the course have been performed.

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 (c) Continuation of approval will be contingent upon continued compliance with CCR Sections  
2 1070, 1070.1 and all requirements as required herein.

3  
4 (d) **General Provisions:** Adequate provisions for the supervision and operation of the course shall  
5 be made in compliance with this Article and the following:

6  
7 (1) The requirements for the quantity, qualifications and responsibilities of the course  
8 director and all faculty or instructional staff, as defined in CCR Sections 1070 and 1070.1,  
9 shall be adhered to at all times.

10  
11 (e) **Facilities and Equipment:**

12  
13 (1) Adequate supplies, materials and provisions for instruction in infection control shall  
14 be provided in compliance with the requirements of CCR Section 1070.

15  
16 (2) There shall be a sufficient number of safe, adequate, and educationally conducive  
17 lecture classrooms and operatories in compliance with the requirements of Section  
18 1070. Adequate, cleaning, disinfecting, and sterilizing facilities shall be provided.

19  
20 (3) All disinfection and sterilization procedures specified in CCR Section 1005 shall be  
21 incorporated in the course content and followed during all laboratory experiences.

22  
23 (f) **Course Duration:** As part of an organized course of instruction, sufficient time shall be  
24 available for all students to achieve minimum competence in the various protocols used during  
25 infection control procedures. The course shall, however, be no less than 8 hours in length  
26 consisting of six (6) hours of didactic and two (2) hours of laboratory instruction designed for the  
27 student to develop minimum competency in all aspects of the subject area.

28  
29 (g) **Course Curriculum and Examination:**

30  
31 (1) A detailed course outline shall be established and maintained consistent with the  
32 requirements of CCR Section 1070 and shall be provided to students prior to the start of  
33 instruction.

34  
35 (2) General course objectives and specific instructional unit objectives shall be stated in  
36 writing and shall include theoretical aspects of each subject as well as practical  
37 application. The theoretical aspects of the course shall provide the content necessary for  
38 students to make judgments regarding infection control procedures.

39  
40 (3) Objective evaluation criteria shall be used for measuring student progress toward  
41 attainment of minimum competency in a laboratory or preclinical setting. Students shall  
42 be provided with specific performance objectives and the evaluation criteria that will be  
43 used for all aspects of the curriculum.

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1           (4) Each student shall pass a written examination which reflects the curriculum content.  
2

3 **(h) Didactic Instruction:** Areas of instruction shall include, at a minimum, the following as they  
4 relate to infection control:  
5

6           (1) Cal/OSHA regulations (Cal. Code Regs., Title 8, Sections 330-344.85) and the Board's  
7 Minimum Standards for Infection Control (Cal. Code Regs., Title 16, Section 1005):  
8

9           (2) Basic dental science and microbiology as they relate to infection control in dentistry.  
10

11           (3) Legal and ethical aspects of infection control procedures.  
12

13           (4) Principles of modes of disease transmission and prevention.  
14

15           (5) Principles, techniques, and protocols of hand hygiene, personal protective equipment,  
16 surface barriers and disinfection, sterilization, sanitation, and hazardous chemicals  
17 associated with infection control.  
18

19           (6) Principles and protocols of sterilizer monitoring and the proper loading, unloading,  
20 storage, and transportation of instruments to work area.  
21

22           (7) Principles and protocols associated with sharps management.  
23

24           (8) Principles and protocols of infection control for laboratory areas.  
25

26           (9) Principles and protocols of waterline maintenance.  
27

28           (10) Principles and protocols of regulated and nonregulated waste management.  
29

30           (11) Principles and protocols related to injury and illness prevention, hazard  
31 communication, general office safety, exposure control, post-exposure requirements,  
32 and monitoring systems sterilization systems.  
33

34 **(i) Laboratory/Simulated-Clinical Instruction:**  
35

36           (1) Providers shall adhere to student/teacher ratios as defined in CCR Section 1070.1 at  
37 all times during instruction.  
38

39           (2) Students shall be provided with established written competencies identifying specific  
40 objective evaluation criteria and performance objectives for all evaluated experiences.  
41 An experience has been successfully completed only if each procedure meets or exceeds  
42 all stated performance criteria.  
43



**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 (3) Upon completion of all didactic instruction, students shall complete the following  
2 competency evaluated experiences in the laboratory or simulated-clinical environment:  
3

4 (A) Hand hygiene procedures.

5 (B) Proper use and disposal of personal protective equipment.

6 (C) Proper processing of contaminated instrumentation from precleaning to  
7 sterilization.

8 (D) Operatory asepsis procedures to include precleaning, disinfection and proper  
9 use of barriers.

10 (E) Proper procedural steps in preparing cleaned instruments for sterilization,  
11 including packaging and wrapping; demonstrate knowledge of the use of  
12 biological spore testing materials

13  
14 (F) Proper protocols for the safe handling and disposal of biohazardous waste  
15 and sharps.

16 (G) Work practice controls relating to the disinfection of intraoral impressions,  
17 bite registrations and prosthetic appliances when prepared for manipulation in a  
18 lab.

19 (H) Proper protocol for purging of dental unit water lines and devices.  
20

21 (4) Each student shall pass a written examination which reflects the curriculum content.  
22

23 (i) **Course Completion:** Upon completion of the course, each student shall be able to:  
24

25 (1) Demonstrate knowledge of Cal/OSHA regulations (Cal. Code Regs., Title 8, Sections  
26 330-344.85) and the Board's Minimum Standards for Infection Control (Cal. Code Regs.,  
27 Title 16, Section 1005):  
28

29 (2) Demonstrate knowledge of basic dental sciences and microbiology as they relate to  
30 infection control in dentistry.  
31

32 (3) Demonstrate knowledge of legal and ethical aspects of infection control procedures.  
33

34 (4) Demonstrate knowledge of the principles of modes of disease transmission and  
35 prevention.  
36

37 (5) Identify the principles, techniques, and protocols of hand hygiene, personal  
38 protective equipment, surface barriers and disinfection, sterilization, sanitation, and  
39 hazardous chemicals associated with infection control.  
40

41 (6) Identify the principles and protocols of sterilizer monitoring and the proper loading,  
42 unloading, storage, and transportation of instruments to work area.  
43

44 (7) Identify the principles and protocols associated with sharps management.

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1  
2 (8) Discuss the principles and protocols related to injury and illness prevention, hazard  
3 communication, general office safety, exposure control, post-exposure requirements,  
4 and monitoring systems sterilization systems.

5  
6 (k) **Certificate of Completion.** Upon successful completion of the course, students shall receive a  
7 certificate consistent with the requirements defined in CCR Section 1070.

8  
9 (l) **Notice of Compliance.** To maintain approval, courses approved prior to the effective date of  
10 these regulations shall submit to the Board a completed “Notice of Compliance with New  
11 Requirements for Infection Control Certificate Courses” (insert date), hereby incorporated by  
12 reference, within ninety (90) days of the effective date of these regulations.

13  
14 ~~In addition to the requirements of Sections 1070 and 1070.1 of these regulations, the following~~  
15 ~~criteria shall be met by a course in infection control, as required in Sections 1750, 1750.2,~~  
16 ~~1750.4, and 1752.1 of the Business and Professions Code, to secure and maintain approval by~~  
17 ~~the Board:~~

18  
19 ~~(a) Adequate provisions for the supervision and operation of the course in infection control~~  
20 ~~shall be made in compliance with Section 1070. Notwithstanding Section 1070, faculty shall not~~  
21 ~~be required to be licensed by the Board, but faculty shall have experience in the instruction of~~  
22 ~~California Division of Occupational Safety and Health (Cal/OSHA) regulations (Cal. Code Regs.,~~  
23 ~~Title 8, Sections 330-344.85) and the Board's Minimum Standards for Infection Control (Cal.~~  
24 ~~Code Regs., Title 16, Section 1005). In addition, all faculty responsible for clinical evaluation~~  
25 ~~shall have completed a two-hour methodology course in clinical evaluation.~~

26  
27 ~~(b) A course in infection control shall be of sufficient duration for the student to develop~~  
28 ~~minimum competency in all aspects of Cal/OSHA regulations (Cal. Code Regs., Title 8, Sections~~  
29 ~~330-344.85) and the Board's Minimum Standards for Infection Control (Cal. Code Regs., Title 16,~~  
30 ~~Section 1005), but in no event less than eight hours, including at least four hours of didactic~~  
31 ~~instruction, at least two hours of laboratory or preclinical instruction, and at least two hours of~~  
32 ~~clinical instruction. Preclinical instruction shall utilize instruments, surfaces, and situations~~  
33 ~~where contamination is simulated, without actual contamination, from bloodborne and other~~  
34 ~~pathogens being present.~~

35  
36 ~~(c) The minimum requirements for equipment and armamentaria shall include personal~~  
37 ~~protective equipment, sterilizer approved by the United States Food and Drug Administration~~  
38 ~~(FDA), ultrasonic unit or instrument processing device, sharps container, selection of~~  
39 ~~instruments, equipment, and armamentaria that are necessary to instruct or demonstrate~~  
40 ~~proper hazardous waste disposal, consistent with Cal/OSHA regulations (Cal. Code Regs., Title 8,~~  
41 ~~Sections 330-344.85), local, state, and federal mandates, and all other armamentaria required~~  
42 ~~to instruct or properly demonstrate the subjects described in the course content.~~

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 ~~(d) Areas of instruction shall include, at a minimum, the instruction specified in subdivisions (e)~~  
2 ~~and (f).~~

3  
4 ~~(e) Didactic instruction shall include, at a minimum, the following as they relate to Cal/OSHA~~  
5 ~~regulations (Cal. Code Regs., Title 8, Sections 330-344.85) and the Board's Minimum Standards~~  
6 ~~for Infection Control (Cal. Code Regs., Title 16, Section 1005):~~

7  
8 ~~(1) Basic dental science and microbiology as they relate to infection control in dentistry.~~

9  
10 ~~(2) Legal and ethical aspects of infection control procedures.~~

11  
12 ~~(3) Terms and protocols specified in Cal. Code of Regs., Title 16, Section 1005 regarding~~  
13 ~~the minimum standards for infection control.~~

14  
15 ~~(4) Principles of modes of disease transmission and prevention.~~

16  
17 ~~(5) Principles, techniques, and protocols of hand hygiene, personal protective~~  
18 ~~equipment, surface barriers and disinfection, sterilization, sanitation, and hazardous~~  
19 ~~chemicals associated with infection control.~~

20  
21 ~~(6) Principles and protocols of sterilizer monitoring and the proper loading, unloading,~~  
22 ~~storage, and transportation of instruments to work area.~~

23  
24 ~~(7) Principles and protocols associated with sharps management.~~

25  
26 ~~(8) Principles and protocols of infection control for laboratory areas.~~

27  
28 ~~(9) Principles and protocols of waterline maintenance.~~

29  
30 ~~(10) Principles and protocols of regulated and nonregulated waste management.~~

31  
32 ~~(11) Principles and protocols related to injury and illness prevention, hazard~~  
33 ~~communication, general office safety, exposure control, postexposure requirements,~~  
34 ~~and monitoring systems for radiation safety and sterilization systems.~~

35  
36 ~~(f) Preclinical instruction shall include three experiences in the following areas, with one used~~  
37 ~~for a practical examination:~~

38  
39 ~~(1) Apply hand cleansing products and perform hand cleansing techniques and~~  
40 ~~protocols.~~

41  
42 ~~(2) Apply, remove, and dispose of patient treatment gloves, utility gloves, overgloves,~~  
43 ~~protective eyewear, masks, and clinical attire.~~

44

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 ~~(3) Apply the appropriate techniques and protocols for the preparation, sterilization,~~  
2 ~~and storage of instruments including, at a minimum, application of personal protective~~  
3 ~~equipment, precleaning, ultrasonic cleaning, rinsing, sterilization wrapping, internal or~~  
4 ~~external process indicators, labeling, sterilization, drying, storage, and delivery to work~~  
5 ~~area.~~

6  
7 ~~(4) Preclean and disinfect contaminated operatory surfaces and devices, and properly~~  
8 ~~use, place, and remove surface barriers.~~

9  
10 ~~(5) Maintain sterilizer including, at a minimum, proper instrument loading and~~  
11 ~~unloading, operation cycle, spore testing, and handling and disposal of sterilization~~  
12 ~~chemicals.~~

13  
14 ~~(6) Apply work practice controls as they relate to the following classification of sharps:~~  
15 ~~anesthetic needles or syringes, orthodontic wires, and broken glass.~~

16  
17 ~~(7) Apply infection control protocol for the following laboratory devices: impressions,~~  
18 ~~bite registrations, and prosthetic appliances.~~

19  
20 ~~(8) Perform waterline maintenance, including use of water tests and purging of~~  
21 ~~waterlines.~~

22  
23 ~~(g) Clinical instruction shall include two experiences in the following areas, with one used for a~~  
24 ~~clinical examination:~~

25  
26 ~~(1) Apply hand cleansing products and perform hand cleansing techniques and~~  
27 ~~protocols.~~

28  
29 ~~(2) Apply, remove, and dispose of patient treatment gloves, utility gloves, overgloves,~~  
30 ~~protective eyewear, masks, and clinical attire.~~

31  
32 ~~(3) Apply the appropriate techniques and protocols for the preparation, sterilization,~~  
33 ~~and storage of instruments including, at a minimum, application of personal protective~~  
34 ~~equipment, precleaning, ultrasonic cleaning, rinsing, sterilization wrapping, internal or~~  
35 ~~external process indicators, labeling, sterilization, drying, storage, and delivery to work~~  
36 ~~area.~~

37  
38 ~~(4) Preclean and disinfect contaminated operatory surfaces and devices, and properly~~  
39 ~~use, place, and remove surface barriers.~~

40  
41 ~~(5) Maintain sterilizer including, at a minimum, proper instrument loading and~~  
42 ~~unloading, operation cycle, spore testing, and handling and disposal of sterilization~~  
43 ~~chemicals.~~

44

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 ~~(6) Apply work practice controls as they relate to the following classification of sharps:~~  
2 ~~anesthetic needles or syringes, orthodontic wires, and broken glass.~~

3  
4 ~~(7) Apply infection control protocol for the following laboratory devices: impressions,~~  
5 ~~bite registrations, and prosthetic appliances.~~

6  
7 ~~(8) Perform waterline maintenance, including use of water tests and purging of~~  
8 ~~waterlines.~~

9  
10 ~~(h) Each student shall pass a written examination that reflects the curriculum content, which~~  
11 ~~may be administered at intervals throughout the course as determined by the course director.~~

12  
13 ~~(i) To maintain approval, programs approved prior to the effective date of these regulations~~  
14 ~~shall submit to the Board a completed "Notice of Compliance with New Requirements for~~  
15 ~~Infection Control Courses (New 10/10)", hereby incorporated by reference, within ninety (90)~~  
16 ~~days of the effective date of these regulations.~~

17  
18 Note: Authority cited: Section 1614, Business and Professions Code. Reference: Sections 1750,  
19 1750.2, 1750.4 and 1752.1, Business and Professions Code.

20  
21 **§ 1070.7. Approval of Orthodontic Assistant Permit Courses.**

22  
23 (a) An orthodontic assistant permit course is one that has as its primary purpose providing  
24 theory, laboratory and clinical application in orthodontic assisting techniques. A single  
25 standard of care shall be maintained and the board shall approve and continue to approve only  
26 courses which continuously maintain a high-quality standard of instruction.

27  
28 (b) A course provider applying for initial approval shall submit an application for approval, hereby  
29 incorporated by reference (insert date), accompanied by the designated, non-refundable fee as  
30 defined in CCR Section 1022. Consistent with CCR Section 1070, the board may approve or deny  
31 approval after evaluation of all components of the course have been performed.

32  
33 (c) Continuation of approval will be contingent upon continued compliance with CCR Sections  
34 1070, 1070.1 and all requirements as required herein.

35  
36 (d) General Provisions: Adequate provisions for the supervision and operation of the course shall  
37 be made in compliance with this Article and the following:

38  
39 (1) Each student shall possess the necessary requirements for application for licensure as  
40 a registered dental assistant and a minimum of 12-months' work experience or possess a  
41 current, active license as a registered dental assistant.

42  
43 (2) Prior to enrollment, each student shall demonstrate completion of an eight (8) hour  
44 board-approved course in Infection Control, a two (2) hour board-approved course in

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 dental assisting jurisprudence and current certification in basic life support issued by the  
2 American Heart Association or American Red Cross.

3  
4 (3) Registered dental assisting program graduates who have completed the course  
5 requirements for the orthodontic assistant permit as a component of a total program of  
6 instruction, shall qualify to apply for the orthodontic assistant permit state board  
7 examination immediately upon graduation from the program.

8  
9 (4) The requirements for the quantity, qualifications and responsibilities of the course  
10 director and all faculty or instructional staff, as defined in CCR Sections 1070 and 1070.1,  
11 shall be adhered to at all times.

12  
13 **(e) Facilities and Equipment:**

14  
15 (1) Adequate supplies, materials and provisions for instruction in the subject area shall  
16 be provided in compliance with the requirements of CCR Section 1070.

17  
18 (2) In addition, the minimum requirements for equipment and armamentaria shall  
19 include banded or bonded orthodontic typodonts in the ratio of at least one (1) for  
20 every four (4) students, bench mount or dental chair mounted mannequin head, curing  
21 light, regular typodont with full dentition and soft gingiva in the ratio of at least one (1)  
22 for every four (4) students, and a selection of orthodontic instruments and adjunct  
23 material for all of the procedures that orthodontic assistant permit holders are  
24 authorized to perform under Business and Professions Code Section 1750.3.

25  
26 (3) There shall be a sufficient number of safe, adequate, and educationally conducive  
27 lecture classrooms and operatories in compliance with the requirements of Section  
28 1070. Adequate, cleaning, disinfecting, and sterilizing facilities shall be provided.

29  
30 (4) All disinfection and sterilization procedures specified in CCR Section 1005 shall be  
31 incorporated in the course content and followed during all laboratory, simulated-clinical  
32 and clinical experiences.

33  
34 **(f) Course Duration:** The course shall be of sufficient duration for the student to develop  
35 minimum competence in all of the duties that orthodontic assistant permit holders are legally  
36 authorized to perform.

37  
38 (1) The course hours for an unlicensed dental assistant who has met all the requirements  
39 of Subsection (d)(1-2) herein, shall be no less than 84 hours, including at least 24 hours of  
40 didactic instruction, at least 28 hours of laboratory instruction, and at least 32 hours of  
41 clinical instruction.

42  
43 (2) The course hours for a student who holds a valid and current registered dental  
44 assistant license shall be no less than 55 hours, including 11 didactic hours, 24 laboratory

**WORKING DOCUMENT:**  
**DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 hours, and 20 clinical hours. A registered dental assistant shall not be required to  
2 complete further instruction in the duties of placing ligature ties and archwires, removing  
3 orthodontic bands, and removing excess cement from tooth surfaces with a hand  
4 instrument.

5  
6 (3) The course hours for a student who holds a valid and current registered dental  
7 assistant license and who has completed a Board-approved course in the use of an  
8 ultrasonic scaler shall be no less than 51 hours, including 9 didactic, 22 laboratory, and 20  
9 clinical. A registered dental assistant who has completed a Board-approved course in the  
10 use of an ultrasonic scaler shall not be required to complete further instruction in that  
11 duty.

12  
13 **(g) Course Curriculum and Examination:**

- 14 1) A detailed course outline shall be established and maintained consistent with the  
15 requirements of CCR Section 1070 and shall be provided to students prior to the start  
16 of instruction.
- 17 2) General course objectives and specific instructional unit objectives shall be stated in  
18 writing and shall include theoretical aspects of each subject as well as practical  
19 application. The theoretical aspects of the course shall provide the content necessary  
20 for students to make judgments regarding orthodontic assistant procedures.
- 21 3) Objective evaluation criteria shall be used for measuring student progress toward  
22 attainment of specific course objectives. Students shall be provided with specific  
23 performance objectives and the evaluation criteria that will be used for all aspects of  
24 the curriculum.
- 25 4) Each student shall pass a written examination which reflects the curriculum content.

26  
27 **(h) Didactic Instruction:** Areas of instruction shall include, at a minimum, the following as they  
28 relate to the orthodontic assistant permit:

29  
30 (1) Archwire characteristics and their role in tooth movement.

31  
32 (2) Introduction to orthodontic instrumentation, use and care.

33  
34 (3) Procedures for placement of archwire previously adjusted by the dentist.

35  
36 (4) Ligature systems: characteristics of contemporary ligature system.

37  
38 (5) Theory of band and bracket positioning.

39  
40 (6) Characteristics of orthodontic bands; sizes, shapes, and functionality.

41  
42 (7) Techniques for orthodontic banding, bracketing and removal, which shall include all  
43 of the following:

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1           (A) Armamentaria.

2  
3           (B) General principles of fitting and removing bands.

4  
5           (C) General principles of bracket positioning, bonding, adhesion, curing and  
6           removal including:

7  
8                   (i) Characteristics and methods of bonding;

9  
10                   (ii) Bonding materials, techniques for use and cure time factors;

11                   (iii) Direct and indirect bracket bonding techniques; and

12  
13                   (iv) Removal.

14  
15  
16           (8) Characteristics of accessory devices: tubes, lingual sheaths, lingual cleats, and their  
17           role in orthodontic care.

18  
19           (9) Orthodontic cements and adhesive materials: classifications, armamentaria, and use.

20  
21           (10) Procedure for removal of bands and brackets after adhesion.

22  
23   **(i) Laboratory, Simulated-Clinical and Clinical Instruction:**

24  
25           (1) Providers shall adhere to student/teacher ratios as defined in CCR Section 1070.1 at  
26           all times during instruction.

27  
28           (2) Students shall be provided with established written competencies identifying specific  
29           objective evaluation criteria and performance objectives for all evaluated experiences.  
30           An experience has been successfully completed only if each procedure meets or exceeds  
31           all stated performance criteria.

32  
33           (3) Upon completion of all didactic instruction, students shall complete the following  
34           competency evaluated experiences in the laboratory or simulated-clinical environment:

35  
36                   (A) Laboratory experiences which shall be conducted on a fully articulated and  
37                   mounted typodont. Sufficient time shall be available for students to  
38                   demonstrate minimum competency performing two (2) laboratory experiences  
39                   in each of the following areas:

40  
41                           (i) sizing, fitting, cementing, and removing orthodontic bands.

42  
43                           (ii) bracket positioning, bonding, curing, and removal of orthodontic  
44                           brackets.



**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1  
2           (iii) archwire placement and ligation.

3  
4           (iv) ultrasonic scaling for removal of orthodontic cement

5  
6           (B) Simulated clinical experiences which shall be conducted on a simulator or  
7           mannequin device. Sufficient time shall be available for students to demonstrate  
8           minimum competency performing two (2) simulated clinical experiences in each  
9           of the following areas:

10  
11           (i) sizing, fitting, cementing, and removing orthodontic bands.

12  
13           (ii) bracket positioning, bonding, curing, and removal of orthodontic  
14           brackets.

15  
16           (iii) archwire placement and ligation.

17  
18           (iv) ultrasonic scaling for removal of orthodontic cement

19  
20           (C) Clinical experiences which shall be conducted on three (3) patients with two  
21           (2) of the three (3) patient experiences used for the clinical examination. The  
22           clinical experiences shall include three (3) performances of the following:

23  
24           (i) sizing, fitting, cementing, and removing orthodontic bands.

25  
26           (ii) bracket positioning, bonding, curing, and removal of orthodontic  
27           brackets.

28  
29           (iii) archwire placement and ligation.

30  
31           (4) Patient selection and evaluation shall follow all stated criteria.

32  
33           (j) **Course Completion:** Upon completion of the course, each student shall be able to:

34  
35           (1) Identify the various orthodontic wires and their purpose.

36  
37           (2) Describe the necessary aspects of pre-operative instructions to patients.

38  
39           (3) Recognize loose appliances.

40  
41           (4) Recognize decalcification and mottled enamel.

42  
43           (5) Identify the indications and contraindications of using an ultrasonic scaler as it  
44           relates to orthodontic cement removal.

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1  
2 (6) Utilize proper armamentaria in an organized sequence for thcement removal on an  
3 orthodontically banded typodont.

4  
5 (7) Demonstrate, on an orthodontically banded typodont, the proper instrument grasp,  
6 fulcrum position, and cheek/tongue retraction.

7  
8 (8) Demonstrate the proper techniques for removal of cement from teeth under  
9 orthodontic treatment without causing damage to hard or soft tissues, removing  
10 cement from underneath appliances, or loosening appliances.

11  
12 (9) Maintain aseptic techniques including disposal of contaminated materials.

13  
14 (k) **Certificate of Completion.** Upon successful completion of the course, students shall receive a  
15 certificate consistent with the requirements defined in CCR Section 1070.

16  
17 (l) **Notice of Compliance.** To maintain approval, courses approved prior to the effective date of  
18 these regulations shall submit to the Board a completed “Notice of Compliance with New  
19 Requirements for Ultrasonic Scaling for Cement Removal Certificate Courses” (insert date), hereby  
20 incorporated by reference, within ninety (90) days of the effective date of these regulations.

21  
22 ~~In addition to the requirements of Sections 1070 and 1070.1, the following criteria shall be met~~  
23 ~~by an orthodontic assistant permit course to secure and maintain approval by the Board.~~

24  
25 ~~(a) The course shall be of sufficient duration for the student to develop minimum competence~~  
26 ~~in all of the duties that orthodontic assistant permit holders are authorized to perform, but in no~~  
27 ~~event less than 84 hours, including at least 24 hours of didactic instruction, at least 28 hours of~~  
28 ~~laboratory instruction, and at least 32 hours of clinical instruction. A registered dental assistant~~  
29 ~~shall not be required to complete further instruction in the duties of placing ligature ties and~~  
30 ~~archwires, removing orthodontic bands, and removing excess cement from tooth surfaces with~~  
31 ~~a hand instrument. The course hours for a student who holds a valid and current registered~~  
32 ~~dental assistant license shall be no less than 55 hours, including 11 didactic hours, 24 laboratory~~  
33 ~~hours, and 20 clinical hours. A registered dental assistant who has completed a Board-approved~~  
34 ~~course in the use of an ultrasonic scaler shall not be required to complete further instruction in~~  
35 ~~that duty. The course hours for a student who holds a valid and current registered dental~~  
36 ~~assistant license and who has completed a Board-approved course in the use of an ultrasonic~~  
37 ~~scaler shall be no less than 51 hours, including 9 didactic hours, 22 laboratory hours, and 20~~  
38 ~~clinical hours.~~

39  
40 ~~(b) The minimum requirements for equipment and armamentaria shall include banded or~~  
41 ~~banded orthodontic typodonts in the ratio of at least one for every four students, bench mount~~  
42 ~~or dental chair mounted mannequin head, curing light, regular typodont with full dentition and~~  
43 ~~soft gingiva in the ratio of at least one for every four students, and a selection of orthodontic~~

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

~~instruments and adjunct material for all of the procedures that orthodontic assistant permitholders are authorized to perform under Business and Professions Code Section 1750.3.~~

~~(c) In addition to the requirements of Section 1070, all faculty or instructional staff members responsible for clinical evaluation shall have completed a two-hour methodology course in clinical evaluation prior to conducting clinical evaluations of students.~~

~~(d) Areas of instruction shall include, at a minimum, the instruction specified in subdivisions (e) to (j), inclusive, as well as instruction in basic background information on orthodontic practice. "Basic background information on orthodontic practice" means, for purposes of this subdivision, the orthodontic treatment review, charting, patient education, and legal and infection control requirements as they apply to orthodontic practice.~~

~~(e) The following requirements shall be met for sizing, fitting, cementing, and removing orthodontic bands:~~

~~(1) Didactic instruction shall contain the following:~~

~~(A) Theory of band positioning and tooth movement.~~

~~(B) Characteristics of band material: malleability, stiffness, ductility, and work hardening.~~

~~(C) Techniques for orthodontic banding and removal, which shall include all of the following:~~

~~(i) Armamentaria.~~

~~(ii) General principles of fitting and removing bands.~~

~~(iii) Normal placement requirements of brackets, tubes, lingual sheaths, lingual cleats, and buttons onto bands.~~

~~(iv) Orthodontic cements and adhesive materials: classifications, armamentaria, and mixing technique.~~

~~(v) Cementing bands: armamentaria, mixing technique, and band cementation procedures.~~

~~(vi) Procedure for removal of bands after cementation.~~

~~(2) Laboratory instruction shall include typodont experience in the sizing, fitting, cementing, and removal of four posterior first molar bands a minimum of two times,~~

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 ~~with the cementing and removal of two first molar bands used as a practical~~  
2 ~~examination.~~

3  
4 ~~(3) Clinical instruction shall include the sizing, fitting, cementing, and removal of four~~  
5 ~~posterior first molar bands on at least two patients.~~

6  
7 ~~(f) The following requirements shall be met for preparing teeth for bonding:~~

8  
9 ~~(1) Didactic instruction shall contain the following:~~

10  
11 ~~(A) Chemistry of etching materials and tooth surface preparation~~

12  
13 ~~(B) Application and time factors~~

14  
15 ~~(C) Armamentaria~~

16  
17 ~~(D) Techniques for tooth etching.~~

18  
19 ~~(2) Laboratory instruction shall include typedont experience with etchant application in~~  
20 ~~preparation for subsequent bracket bonding on four anterior and four posterior teeth a~~  
21 ~~minimum of four times each, with one of each of the four times used for a practical~~  
22 ~~examination.~~

23  
24 ~~(3) Clinical instruction shall include etchant application in preparation for bracket~~  
25 ~~bonding on anterior and posterior teeth on at least two patients.~~

26  
27 ~~(g) The following requirements shall be met for bracket positioning, bond curing, and removal~~  
28 ~~of orthodontic brackets.~~

29  
30 ~~(1) Didactic instruction shall include the following elements:~~

31  
32 ~~(A) Characteristics and methods of orthodontic bonding.~~

33  
34 ~~(B) Armamentaria.~~

35  
36 ~~(C) Types of bracket bonding surfaces.~~

37  
38 ~~(D) Bonding material characteristics, application techniques, and curing time~~  
39 ~~factors.~~

40  
41 ~~(E) Procedure for direct and indirect bracket bonding.~~

42  
43 ~~(F) Procedures for bracket or tube removal.~~

44

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 ~~(2) Laboratory instruction shall contain typodont experience with selecting,~~  
2 ~~prepositioning, tooth etching, positioning, curing, and removing of four anterior and~~  
3 ~~four posterior brackets a minimum of four times each, with one each of the four times~~  
4 ~~used for a practical examination.~~

5  
6 ~~(3) Clinical instruction shall contain selecting, adjusting, prepositioning, etching, curing,~~  
7 ~~and removal of anterior and posterior brackets on at least two patients.~~

8  
9 (h) ~~The following requirements shall be met for archwire placement and ligation:~~

10  
11 ~~(1) Didactic instruction shall contain the following:~~

12  
13 ~~(A) Archwire characteristics.~~

14  
15 ~~(B) Armamentaria.~~

16  
17 ~~(C) Procedures for placement of archwire previously adjusted by the dentist.~~

18  
19 ~~(D) Ligature systems, purpose, and types, including elastic, wire, and self ligating.~~

20  
21 ~~(2) Laboratory instruction shall contain typodont experience on the following:~~

22  
23 ~~(A) The insertion of a preformed maxillary and mandibular archwire a minimum~~  
24 ~~of four times per arch, with one of each of the four times used for a practical~~  
25 ~~examination.~~

26  
27 ~~(B) Ligation of maxillary and mandibular archwire using elastic or metal ligatures~~  
28 ~~or self ligating brackets a minimum of four times per arch, with one of each of~~  
29 ~~the four times used for a practical examination.~~

30  
31 ~~(3) Clinical instruction shall contain the following:~~

32  
33 ~~(A) Insertion of a preformed maxillary and mandibular archwire on at least two~~  
34 ~~patients.~~

35  
36 ~~(B) Ligating both preformed maxillary and mandibular archwires using a~~  
37 ~~combination of elastic and metal ligatures or self ligating brackets on at least~~  
38 ~~two patients for each.~~

39  
40 (i) ~~The following requirements shall be met for cement removal with a hand instrument:~~

41  
42 ~~(1) Didactic instruction shall contain the following:~~

43  
44 ~~(A) Armamentaria~~

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

~~(B) Techniques of cement removal using hand instruments and related materials~~

~~(2) Laboratory instruction shall contain typodont experience on the removal of excess cement supragingivally from an orthodontically banded typodont using a hand instrument four times, with one of the four times used for a practical examination.~~

~~(3) Clinical instruction shall contain removal of excess cement supragingivally from orthodontic bands with a hand instrument on at least two patients.~~

~~(j) Instruction for cement removal with an ultrasonic scaler shall be in accordance with Cal. Code Regs., Title 16, Section 1070.5, which governs courses in the removal of excess cement from teeth under orthodontic treatment with an ultrasonic scaler.~~

~~(k) Each student shall pass a written examination that reflects the curriculum content, which may be administered at intervals throughout the course as determined by the course director.~~

~~(l) To maintain approval, programs approved prior to the effective date of these regulations shall submit to the Board a completed "Notice of Compliance with New Requirements for Orthodontic Assistant Permit Courses (New 10/10)", hereby incorporated by reference, within ninety (90) days of the effective date of these regulations.~~

Note: Authority cited: Section 1614, Business and Professions Code. Reference: Sections 1750.2 and 1752.4, Business and Professions Code.

**§ 1070.8. Approval of Dental Sedation Assistant Permit Courses.**

(a) A dental sedation assistant permit course is one that has as its primary purpose providing theory, laboratory and clinical instruction and application in dental sedation assisting duties and functions. A single standard of care shall be maintained, and the board shall approve and continue to approve only courses which continuously maintain a high-quality standard of instruction. As used in this Section, the following definitions apply: "IV" means intravenous, "AED" means automated external defibrillator, "CO2" means carbon dioxide, and "ECG" and "EKG" both mean electrocardiograms.

(b) A course provider applying for initial approval shall submit an application for approval, hereby incorporated by reference (insert date), accompanied by the designated, non-refundable fee as defined in CCR Section 1022. Consistent with CCR Section 1070, the board may approve or deny approval after evaluation of all components of the course have been performed.

(1) In addition to the requirements of CCR Section 1070 and 1070.1, the course director, designated faculty member, or instructional staff member of a dental sedation assistant course may, in lieu of a license issued by the Board, possess a valid, active, and current license issued in California as a physician and surgeon.

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1  
2 (2) Consistent with the requirements of CCR Section 1070, as it relates to instructional  
3 methodology, the course director, designated faculty member, or instructional staff  
4 member(s) responsible for clinical evaluation shall complete such course in clinical  
5 evaluation prior to conducting clinical evaluations of students.

6  
7 (3) In addition to the requirements of CCR Sections 1070 and 1070.1, clinical instruction  
8 in a dental sedation assistant course shall be given under direct supervision of the course  
9 director, designated faculty member, or instructional staff member who shall be the  
10 holder of a valid, active, and current general anesthesia or conscious sedation permit  
11 issued by the Board. Evaluation of the condition of a sedated patient shall remain the  
12 responsibility of the director, designated faculty member, or instructional staff member  
13 authorized to administer conscious sedation or general anesthesia, who shall be at the  
14 patient's chairside while conscious sedation or general anesthesia is being administered.

15  
16 (c) Continuation of approval will be contingent upon continued compliance with CCR Sections  
17 1070, 1070.1 and all requirements as required herein.

18  
19 (d) **General Provisions:** Adequate provisions for the supervision and operation of the course shall  
20 be made in compliance with this Article and the following:

21  
22 (1) Each student shall possess the necessary requirements for application for licensure as  
23 a registered dental assistant and a minimum of 12-months' work experience or possess a  
24 current, active license as a registered dental assistant.

25  
26 (2) Prior to enrollment, each student shall demonstrate completion of an eight (8) hour  
27 board-approved course in Infection Control, a two (2) hour board-approved course in  
28 dental assisting jurisprudence and current certification in basic life support issued by the  
29 American Heart Association or American Red Cross.

30  
31 (3) The requirements for the quantity, qualifications and responsibilities of the course  
32 director and all faculty or instructional staff, as defined in CCR Sections 1070 and 1070.1,  
33 shall be adhered to at all times.

34  
35 (e) **Facilities and Equipment:**

36  
37 (1) Adequate supplies, materials and provisions for instruction in the subject area shall  
38 be provided in compliance with the requirements of CCR Section 1070.

39  
40 (2) In addition, one pulse oximeter for each six students; one AED or AED trainer; one  
41 capnograph or teaching device for monitoring of end tidal CO<sub>2</sub>; blood pressure cuff and  
42 stethoscope for each six (6) students; one pretracheal stethoscope for each six (6)  
43 students; one electrocardiogram machine, one automatic blood pressure/pulse  
44 measuring system/machine, and one oxygen delivery system including oxygen tank; one

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 IV start kit for each student; one venous access device kit for each student; IV  
2 equipment and supplies for IV infusions including hanging device infusion containers  
3 and tubing for each six (6) students; one sharps container for each six (6) students;  
4 packaged syringes, needles, needleless devices, practice fluid ampules and vials for each  
5 student; stopwatch or timer with second hand for each six (6) students; one heart/lung  
6 sounds mannequin or teaching device; tonsillar or pharyngeal suction tip, endotracheal  
7 tube forceps, endotracheal tube and appropriate connectors, suction equipment for  
8 aspiration of oral and pharyngeal cavities, and laryngoscope in the ratio of at least one  
9 for each six (6) students; any other monitoring or emergency equipment required  
10 by CCR Section 1043 for the administration of general anesthesia or conscious sedation;  
11 and a selection of instruments and supplemental armamentaria for all of the procedures  
12 that dental sedation assistant permitholders are authorized to perform according to  
13 Business and Professions Code Section 1750.5.

14  
15 (3) Each operatory used for preclinical or clinical training shall contain either a surgery  
16 table or a power-operated chair for treating patients in a supine position, an irrigation  
17 system or sterile water delivery system as they pertain to the specific practice, and all  
18 other equipment and armamentarium required to instruct in the duties that dental  
19 sedation assistant permitholders are authorized to perform according to Business and  
20 Professions Code Section 1750.5.

21  
22 (4) All students, faculty, and staff involved in the direct provision of patient care shall be  
23 certified in basic life support procedures, including the use of an automatic electronic  
24 defibrillator.

25  
26 (5) There shall be a sufficient number of safe, adequate, and educationally conducive  
27 lecture classrooms and operatories in compliance with the requirements of CCR Section  
28 1070. Adequate, cleaning, disinfecting, and sterilizing facilities shall be provided.

29  
30 (6) All disinfection and sterilization procedures specified in CCR Section 1005 shall be  
31 incorporated in the course content and followed during all laboratory, simulated-clinical  
32 and clinical experiences.

33  
34 (f) **Course Duration:** The course shall be of a sufficient duration for the student to develop  
35 minimum competence in all of the duties that dental sedation assistant permitholders are  
36 authorized to perform, but in no event less than 110 hours, including at least 40 hours of didactic  
37 instruction, at least 32 hours of combined laboratory and preclinical instruction, and at least 38  
38 hours of clinical instruction. Clinical instruction shall require completion of all of the tasks  
39 described in this Section during no less than twenty (20) supervised cases utilizing conscious  
40 sedation or general anesthesia.

41  
42 (g) **Course Curriculum and Examination:**  
43



**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 (1) A detailed course outline shall be established and maintained consistent with the  
2 requirements of CCR Section 1070 and shall be provided to students prior to the start of  
3 instruction.

4  
5 (2) General course objectives and specific instructional unit objectives shall be stated in  
6 writing and shall include theoretical aspects of each subject as well as practical  
7 application. The theoretical aspects of the course shall provide the content necessary for  
8 students to make judgments regarding dental sedation assistant procedures.

9  
10 (3) Objective evaluation criteria shall be used for measuring student progress toward  
11 attainment of specific course objectives. Students shall be provided with specific  
12 performance objectives and the evaluation criteria that will be used for all aspects of the  
13 curriculum.

14  
15 (4) Each student shall pass a written examination which reflects the curriculum content.

16  
17 (h) **Didactic Instruction:** Areas of instruction shall relate to the duties that dental sedation  
18 assistant permitholders are authorized to perform. General didactic shall contain:

19  
20 (1) selection factors through review of medical history, physical assessment, and Patient  
21 evaluation and medical  
22 of anatomy and physiology of the circulatory, cardiovascular, and consultation.

23  
24 (2) Characteristics respiratory systems, and the central and peripheral nervous system.

25  
26 (3) Characteristics of anxiety management related to the surgical patient, relatives, and  
27 escorts, and characteristics of anxiety and pain reduction techniques.

28  
29 (4) Overview of the classification of drugs used by patients for cardiac disease,  
30 respiratory disease, hypertension, diabetes, neurological disorders, and infectious  
31 diseases.

32  
33 (5) Overview of techniques and specific drug groups utilized for sedation and general  
34 anesthesia.

35  
36 (6) Definitions and characteristics of levels of sedation achieved with general anesthesia  
37 and sedative agents, including the distinctions between conscious sedation, deep  
38 sedation, and general anesthesia.

39  
40 (7) Overview of patient monitoring during conscious sedation and general anesthesia.

41  
42 (8) Prevention, recognition, and management of complications.

43  
44 (9) Obtaining informed consent.

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1  
2 (i) With respect to medical emergencies, didactic instruction shall contain:

3  
4 (1) An overview of medical emergencies, including, but not limited to, airway  
5 obstruction, bronchospasm or asthma, laryngospasm, allergic reactions, syncope,  
6 cardiac arrest, cardiac dysrhythmia, seizure disorders, hyperglycemia and hypoglycemia,  
7 drug overdose, hyperventilation, acute coronary syndrome including angina and  
8 myocardial infarction, hypertension, hypotension, stroke, aspiration of vomitus, and  
9 congestive heart failure.

10  
11 (2) Laboratory instruction shall include the simulation and response to at least the  
12 following medical emergencies: airway obstruction, bronchospasm, emesis and  
13 aspiration of foreign material under anesthesia, angina pectoris, myocardial infarction,  
14 hypotension, hypertension, cardiac arrest, allergic reaction, convulsions, hypoglycemia,  
15 syncope, and respiratory depression. Both training mannequins and other students or  
16 staff may be used for simulation. The student shall demonstrate proficiency in all  
17 simulated emergencies during training and shall then be eligible to complete a practical  
18 examination on this Section.

19  
20 (j) With respect to sedation and the pediatric patient, didactic instruction shall contain the  
21 following:

22  
23 (1) Psychological considerations.

24  
25 (2) Patient evaluation and selection factors through review of medical history, physical  
26 assessment, and medical consultation.

27  
28 (3) Definitions and characteristics of levels of sedation achieved with general anesthesia  
29 and sedative agents, with special emphasis on the distinctions between conscious  
30 sedation, deep sedation, and general anesthesia.

31  
32 (4) Review of respiratory and circulatory physiology and related anatomy, with special  
33 emphasis on establishing and maintaining a patient airway.

34  
35 (5) Overview of pharmacology agents used in contemporary sedation and general  
36 anesthesia.

37  
38 (6) Patient monitoring.

39  
40 (7) Obtaining informed consent.

41  
42 (8) Prevention, recognition, and management of complications, including principles of  
43 basic life support.

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 (k) With respect to physically, mentally, and neurologically compromised patients, didactic  
2 instruction shall contain the following: an overview of characteristics of Alzheimer's disease,  
3 autism, cerebral palsy, Down's syndrome, mental retardation, multiple sclerosis, muscular  
4 dystrophy, Parkinson's disease, schizophrenia, and stroke.

5  
6 (l) With respect to health history and patient assessment, didactic instruction shall include, at a  
7 minimum, the recording of the following:

8  
9 (1) Age, sex, weight, physical status as defined by the American Society of  
10 Anesthesiologists Physical Status Classification System, medication use, general health,  
11 any known or suspected medically compromising conditions, rationale for anesthesia or  
12 sedation of the patient, visual examination of the airway, and auscultation of the heart  
13 and lungs as medically required.

14  
15 (2) General anesthesia or conscious sedation records that contain a time-oriented  
16 record with preoperative, multiple intraoperative, and postoperative pulse oximetry and  
17 blood pressure and pulse readings, frequency and dose of drug administration, length of  
18 procedure, complications of anesthesia or sedation, and a statement of the patient's  
19 condition at time of discharge.

20  
21 (m) With respect to monitoring heart sounds with pretracheal/precordial stethoscope and EKG  
22 and use of AED:

23  
24 (1) Didactic instruction shall contain the following:

25  
26 (A) Characteristics of pretracheal/precordial stethoscope.

27  
28 (B) Review of anatomy and physiology of circulatory system: heart, blood  
29 vessels, and cardiac cycle as it relates to EKG.

30  
31 (C) Characteristics of rhythm interpretation and waveform analysis basics.

32  
33 (D) Characteristics of manual intermittent and automatic blood pressure and  
34 pulse assessment.

35  
36 (E) Characteristics and use of an AED.

37  
38 (F) Procedure for using a pretracheal/precordial stethoscope for monitoring of  
39 heart sounds.

40  
41 (G) Procedure for use and monitoring of the heart with an EKG machine,  
42 including electrode placement, and the adjustment of such equipment.

43

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1           (H) Procedure for using manual and automatic blood pressure/pulse/respiration  
2           measuring system.

3  
4           (2) Preclinical instruction: Utilizing another student or staff person, the student shall  
5           demonstrate proficiency in each of the following tasks during training and shall then be  
6           eligible to complete an examination on this Section.

7  
8                   (A) Assessment of blood pressure and pulse both manually and utilizing an  
9                   automatic system.

10  
11                   (B) Placement and assessment of an EKG. Instruction shall include the  
12                   adjustment of such equipment.

13  
14                   (C) Monitoring and assessment of heart sounds with a pretracheal/precordial  
15                   stethoscope.

16  
17                   (D) Use of an AED or AED trainer.

18  
19           (3) Clinical instruction: Utilizing patients, the student shall demonstrate proficiency in  
20           each of the following tasks, under supervision of faculty or instructional staff as  
21           described in Section 1070.8(a)(3) and shall then be eligible to complete an examination  
22           on this Section.

23  
24                   (A) Assessment of blood pressure and pulse both manually and utilizing an  
25                   automatic system.

26  
27                   (B) Placement and assessment of an EKG. Instruction shall include the  
28                   adjustment of such equipment.

29  
30                   (C) Monitoring and assessment of heart sounds with a pretracheal/precordial  
31                   stethoscope.

32  
33           (n) With respect to monitoring lung/respiratory sounds with pretracheal/precordial  
34           stethoscope and monitoring oxygen saturation end tidal CO2 with pulse oximeter and  
35           capnograph:

36  
37           (1) Didactic instruction shall contain the following:

38  
39                   (A) Characteristics of pretracheal/precordial stethoscope, pulse oximeter and  
40                   capnograph for respiration monitoring.

41  
42                   (B) Review of anatomy and physiology of respiratory system to include the nose,  
43                   mouth, pharynx, epiglottis, larynx, trachea, bronchi, bronchioles, and alveolus.

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 (C) Characteristics of respiratory monitoring/lung sounds: mechanism of  
2 respiration, composition of respiratory gases, oxygen saturation.

3  
4 (D) Characteristics of manual and automatic respiration assessment.

5  
6 (E) Procedure for using a pretracheal/precordial stethoscope for respiration  
7 monitoring.

8  
9 (F) Procedure for using and maintaining pulse oximeter for monitoring oxygen  
10 saturation.

11  
12 (G) Procedure for use and maintenance of capnograph.

13  
14 (H) Characteristics for monitoring blood and skin color and other related factors.

15  
16 (I) Procedures and use of an oxygen delivery system.

17  
18 (J) Characteristics of airway management to include armamentaria and use.

19  
20 (2) Preclinical instruction: Utilizing another student or staff person, the student shall  
21 demonstrate proficiency in each of the following tasks during training and shall then be  
22 eligible to complete an examination on this Section.

23  
24 (A) Assessment of respiration rates.

25  
26 (B) Monitoring and assessment of lung sounds and ventilation with a  
27 pretracheal/precordial stethoscope.

28  
29 (C) Monitoring oxygen saturation with a pulse oximeter.

30  
31 (D) Use of an oxygen delivery system.

32  
33 (3) Clinical instruction: Utilizing patients, the student shall demonstrate proficiency in  
34 each of the following tasks, under supervision by faculty or instructional staff as  
35 described in Section 1070.8(a)(3) and shall then be eligible to complete an examination  
36 on this Section.

37  
38 (A) Assessment of respiration rates.

39  
40 (B) Monitoring and assessment of lung sounds and ventilation with a  
41 pretracheal/precordial stethoscope.

42  
43 (C) Monitoring oxygen saturation with a pulse oximeter.

44

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1           (D) Use of an oxygen delivery system.

2  
3 (o) With respect to drug identification and draw:

4  
5           (1) Didactic instruction shall contain:

6  
7                   (A) Characteristics of syringes and needles: use, types, gauges, lengths, and  
8                   components.

9  
10                   (B) Characteristics of drug, medication, and fluid storage units: use, type,  
11                   components, identification of label including generic and brand names, strength,  
12                   potential adverse reactions, expiration date, and contraindications.

13  
14                   (C) Characteristics of drug draw: armamentaria, label verification, ampule and  
15                   vial preparation, and drug withdrawal techniques.

16  
17           (2) Laboratory instruction: The student shall demonstrate proficiency in the withdrawal  
18           of fluids from a vial or ampule in the amount specified by faculty or instructional staff  
19           and shall then be eligible to complete a practical examination.

20  
21           (3) Clinical instruction: The student shall demonstrate proficiency in the evaluation of  
22           vial or container labels for identification of content, dosage, and strength and in the  
23           withdrawal of fluids from a vial or ampule in the amount specified by faculty or  
24           instructional staff as described in Section 1070.8(a)(3) and shall then be eligible to  
25           complete an examination on this Section.

26  
27 (p) With respect to adding drugs, medications, and fluids to IV lines:

28  
29           (1) Didactic instruction shall contain:

30  
31                   (A) Characteristics of adding drugs, medications, and fluids to IV lines in the  
32                   presence of a licensed dentist.

33  
34                   (B) Armamentaria.

35  
36                   (C) Procedures for adding drugs, medications, and fluids, including dosage and  
37                   frequency.

38  
39                   (D) Procedures for adding drugs, medications, and fluids by IV bolus.

40  
41                   (E) Characteristics of patient observation for signs and symptoms of drug  
42                   response.

43

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1       (2) Laboratory instruction: The student shall demonstrate proficiency in adding fluids to  
2       an existing IV line on a venipuncture training arm or in a simulated environment and  
3       shall then be eligible to complete a practical examination on this Section.

4       (3) Clinical instruction: The student shall demonstrate proficiency in adding fluids to  
5       existing IV lines in the presence of course faculty or instructional staff as described in  
6       Section 1070.8(a)(3) and shall then be eligible to complete an examination on this  
7       Section.

8  
9       (g) With respect to the removal of IV lines:

10  
11       (1) Didactic instruction shall include overview and procedures for the removal of an IV  
12       line.

13  
14       (2) Laboratory instruction: The student shall demonstrate proficiency on a venipuncture  
15       training arm or in a simulated environment for IV removal and shall then be eligible for a  
16       practical examination.

17  
18       (3) Clinical instruction: The student shall demonstrate proficiency in removing IV lines in  
19       the presence of course faculty or instructional staff as described in Section 1070.8(a)(3)  
20       and shall then be eligible to complete an examination on this Section.

21  
22       (r) Each student shall pass a written examination that reflects the curriculum content, which  
23       may be administered at intervals throughout the course as determined by the course director.

24  
25       (s) **Certificate of Completion.** Upon successful completion of the course, students shall receive a  
26       certificate consistent with the requirements defined in CCR Section 1070.

27  
28       (t) **Notice of Compliance.** To maintain approval, courses approved prior to the effective date of  
29       these regulations shall submit to the Board a completed "Notice of Compliance with New  
30       Requirements for Ultrasonic Scaling for Cement Removal Certificate Courses" (insert date), hereby  
31       incorporated by reference, within ninety (90) days of the effective date of these regulations.

32  
33       In addition to the requirements of Sections 1070 and 1070.1, the following criteria shall be met  
34       by a dental sedation assistant permit course to secure and maintain approval by the Board. As  
35       used in this Section, the following definitions apply: "IV" means intravenous, "AED" means  
36       automated external defibrillator, "CO2" means carbon dioxide, and "ECG" and "EKG" both  
37       mean electrocardiogram.

38  
39       ~~(a) — (1) The course director, designated faculty member, or instructional staff member may,~~  
40       ~~in lieu of a license issued by the Board, possess a valid, active, and current license issued~~  
41       ~~in California as a physician and surgeon.~~

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 ~~(2) The course director, designated faculty member, or instructional staff member~~  
2 ~~responsible for clinical evaluation shall have completed a two-hour methodology course~~  
3 ~~in clinical evaluation prior to conducting clinical evaluations of students.~~

4  
5 ~~(3) Clinical instruction shall be given under direct supervision of the course director,~~  
6 ~~designated faculty member, or instructional staff member who shall be the holder of a~~  
7 ~~valid, active, and current general anesthesia or conscious sedation permit issued by the~~  
8 ~~Board. Evaluation of the condition of a sedated patient shall remain the responsibility of~~  
9 ~~the director, designated faculty member, or instructional staff member authorized to~~  
10 ~~administer conscious sedation or general anesthesia, who shall be at the patient's~~  
11 ~~chairside while conscious sedation or general anesthesia is being administered.~~

12  
13 ~~(b) The course shall be of a sufficient duration for the student to develop minimum competence~~  
14 ~~in all of the duties that dental sedation assistant permitholders are authorized to perform, but~~  
15 ~~in no event less than 110 hours, including at least 40 hours of didactic instruction, at least 32~~  
16 ~~hours of combined laboratory and preclinical instruction, and at least 38 hours of clinical~~  
17 ~~instruction. Clinical instruction shall require completion of all of the tasks described in~~  
18 ~~subdivisions (j), (k), (l), (m), and (n) of this Section during no less than twenty (20) supervised~~  
19 ~~cases utilizing conscious sedation or general anesthesia.~~

20  
21 ~~(c) The following are minimum requirements for equipment and armamentaria:~~

22  
23 ~~(1) One pulse oximeter for each six students; one AED or AED trainer; one capnograph~~  
24 ~~or teaching device for monitoring of end tidal CO<sub>2</sub>; blood pressure cuff and stethoscope~~  
25 ~~for each six students; one pretracheal stethoscope for each six students; one~~  
26 ~~electrocardiogram machine, one automatic blood pressure/pulse measuring~~  
27 ~~system/machine, and one oxygen delivery system including oxygen tank; one IV start kit~~  
28 ~~for each student; one venous access device kit for each student; IV equipment and~~  
29 ~~supplies for IV infusions including hanging device infusion containers and tubing for each~~  
30 ~~six students; one sharps container for each six students; packaged syringes, needles,~~  
31 ~~needleless devices, practice fluid ampules and vials for each student; stopwatch or timer~~  
32 ~~with second hand for each six students; one heart/lung sounds mannequin or teaching~~  
33 ~~device; tonsillar or pharyngeal suction tip, endotracheal tube forceps, endotracheal tube~~  
34 ~~and appropriate connectors, suction equipment for aspiration of oral and pharyngeal~~  
35 ~~cavities, and laryngoscope in the ratio of at least one for each six students; any other~~  
36 ~~monitoring or emergency equipment required by Cal. Code Regs., Title 16, Section 1043~~  
37 ~~for the administration of general anesthesia or conscious sedation; and a selection of~~  
38 ~~instruments and supplemental armamentaria for all of the procedures that dental~~  
39 ~~sedation assistant permitholders are authorized to perform according to Business and~~  
40 ~~Professions Code Section 1750.5.~~

41  
42 ~~(2) Each operatory used for preclinical or clinical training shall contain either a surgery~~  
43 ~~table or a power-operated chair for treating patients in a supine position, an irrigation~~  
44 ~~system or sterile water delivery system as they pertain to the specific practice, and all~~



**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 ~~other equipment and armamentarium required to instruct in the duties that dental~~  
2 ~~sedation assistant permitholders are authorized to perform according to Business and~~  
3 ~~Professions Code Section 1750.5.~~

4  
5 ~~(3) All students, faculty, and staff involved in the direct provision of patient care shall be~~  
6 ~~certified in basic life support procedures, including the use of an automatic electronic~~  
7 ~~defibrillator.~~

8  
9 ~~(d) Areas of instruction shall include, at a minimum, the instruction specified in subdivisions (e)~~  
10 ~~to (n), inclusive, as they relate to the duties that dental sedation assistant permitholders are~~  
11 ~~authorized to perform.~~

12  
13 ~~(e) General didactic instruction shall contain:~~

14  
15 ~~(1) Patient evaluation and selection factors through review of medical history, physical~~  
16 ~~assessment, and medical consultation.~~

17  
18 ~~(2) Characteristics of anatomy and physiology of the circulatory, cardiovascular, and~~  
19 ~~respiratory systems, and the central and peripheral nervous system.~~

20  
21 ~~(3) Characteristics of anxiety management related to the surgical patient, relatives, and~~  
22 ~~escorts, and characteristics of anxiety and pain reduction techniques.~~

23  
24 ~~(4) Overview of the classification of drugs used by patients for cardiac disease,~~  
25 ~~respiratory disease, hypertension, diabetes, neurological disorders, and infectious~~  
26 ~~diseases.~~

27  
28 ~~(5) Overview of techniques and specific drug groups utilized for sedation and general~~  
29 ~~anesthesia.~~

30  
31 ~~(6) Definitions and characteristics of levels of sedation achieved with general anesthesia~~  
32 ~~and sedative agents, including the distinctions between conscious sedation, deep~~  
33 ~~sedation, and general anesthesia.~~

34  
35 ~~(7) Overview of patient monitoring during conscious sedation and general anesthesia.~~

36  
37 ~~(8) Prevention, recognition, and management of complications.~~

38  
39 ~~(9) Obtaining informed consent.~~

40  
41 ~~(f) With respect to medical emergencies, didactic instruction shall contain:~~

42  
43 ~~(1) An overview of medical emergencies, including, but not limited to, airway~~  
44 ~~obstruction, bronchospasm or asthma, laryngospasm, allergic reactions, syncope,~~

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1       ~~cardiac arrest, cardiac dysrhythmia, seizure disorders, hyperglycemia and hypoglycemia,~~  
2       ~~drug overdose, hyperventilation, acute coronary syndrome including angina and~~  
3       ~~myocardial infarction, hypertension, hypotension, stroke, aspiration of vomitus, and~~  
4       ~~congestive heart failure.~~

5  
6       ~~(2) Laboratory instruction shall include the simulation and response to at least the~~  
7       ~~following medical emergencies: airway obstruction, bronchospasm, emesis and~~  
8       ~~aspiration of foreign material under anesthesia, angina pectoris, myocardial infarction,~~  
9       ~~hypotension, hypertension, cardiac arrest, allergic reaction, convulsions, hypoglycemia,~~  
10       ~~syncope, and respiratory depression. Both training mannequins and other students or~~  
11       ~~staff may be used for simulation. The student shall demonstrate proficiency in all~~  
12       ~~simulated emergencies during training and shall then be eligible to complete a practical~~  
13       ~~examination on this Section.~~

14  
15       ~~(g) With respect to sedation and the pediatric patient, didactic instruction shall contain the~~  
16       ~~following:~~

17  
18       ~~(1) Psychological considerations.~~

19  
20       ~~(2) Patient evaluation and selection factors through review of medical history, physical~~  
21       ~~assessment, and medical consultation.~~

22  
23       ~~(3) Definitions and characteristics of levels of sedation achieved with general anesthesia~~  
24       ~~and sedative agents, with special emphasis on the distinctions between conscious~~  
25       ~~sedation, deep sedation, and general anesthesia.~~

26  
27       ~~(4) Review of respiratory and circulatory physiology and related anatomy, with special~~  
28       ~~emphasis on establishing and maintaining a patient airway.~~

29  
30       ~~(5) Overview of pharmacology agents used in contemporary sedation and general~~  
31       ~~anesthesia.~~

32  
33       ~~(6) Patient monitoring.~~

34  
35       ~~(7) Obtaining informed consent.~~

36  
37       ~~(8) Prevention, recognition, and management of complications, including principles of~~  
38       ~~basic life support.~~

39  
40       ~~(h) With respect to physically, mentally, and neurologically compromised patients, didactic~~  
41       ~~instruction shall contain the following: an overview of characteristics of Alzheimer's disease,~~  
42       ~~autism, cerebral palsy, Down's syndrome, mental retardation, multiple sclerosis, muscular~~  
43       ~~dystrophy, Parkinson's disease, schizophrenia, and stroke.~~

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 ~~(i) With respect to health history and patient assessment, didactic instruction shall include, at a~~  
2 ~~minimum, the recording of the following:~~

3  
4 ~~(1) Age, sex, weight, physical status as defined by the American Society of~~  
5 ~~Anesthesiologists Physical Status Classification System, medication use, general health,~~  
6 ~~any known or suspected medically compromising conditions, rationale for anesthesia or~~  
7 ~~sedation of the patient, visual examination of the airway, and auscultation of the heart~~  
8 ~~and lungs as medically required.~~

9  
10 ~~(2) General anesthesia or conscious sedation records that contain a time-oriented~~  
11 ~~record with preoperative, multiple intraoperative, and postoperative pulse oximetry and~~  
12 ~~blood pressure and pulse readings, frequency and dose of drug administration, length of~~  
13 ~~procedure, complications of anesthesia or sedation, and a statement of the patient's~~  
14 ~~condition at time of discharge.~~

15  
16 ~~(j) With respect to monitoring heart sounds with pretracheal/precordial stethoscope and EKG~~  
17 ~~and use of AED:~~

18  
19 ~~(1) Didactic instruction shall contain the following:~~

20  
21 ~~(A) Characteristics of pretracheal/precordial stethoscope.~~

22  
23 ~~(B) Review of anatomy and physiology of circulatory system: heart, blood~~  
24 ~~vessels, and cardiac cycle as it relates to EKG.~~

25  
26 ~~(C) Characteristics of rhythm interpretation and waveform analysis basics.~~

27  
28 ~~(D) Characteristics of manual intermittent and automatic blood pressure and~~  
29 ~~pulse assessment.~~

30  
31 ~~(E) Characteristics and use of an AED.~~

32  
33 ~~(F) Procedure for using a pretracheal/precordial stethoscope for monitoring of~~  
34 ~~heart sounds.~~

35  
36 ~~(G) Procedure for use and monitoring of the heart with an EKG machine,~~  
37 ~~including electrode placement, and the adjustment of such equipment.~~

38  
39 ~~(H) Procedure for using manual and automatic blood pressure/pulse/respiration~~  
40 ~~measuring system.~~

41  
42 ~~(2) Preclinical instruction: Utilizing another student or staff person, the student shall~~  
43 ~~demonstrate proficiency in each of the following tasks during training and shall then be~~  
44 ~~eligible to complete an examination on this Section.~~

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1  
2 ~~(A) Assessment of blood pressure and pulse both manually and utilizing an~~  
3 ~~automatic system.~~

4  
5 ~~(B) Placement and assessment of an EKG. Instruction shall include the~~  
6 ~~adjustment of such equipment.~~

7  
8 ~~(C) Monitoring and assessment of heart sounds with a pretracheal/precordial~~  
9 ~~stethoscope.~~

10  
11 ~~(D) Use of an AED or AED trainer.~~

12  
13 ~~(3) Clinical instruction: Utilizing patients, the student shall demonstrate proficiency in~~  
14 ~~each of the following tasks, under supervision of faculty or instructional staff as~~  
15 ~~described in Section 1070.8(a)(3), and shall then be eligible to complete an examination~~  
16 ~~on this Section.~~

17  
18 ~~(A) Assessment of blood pressure and pulse both manually and utilizing an~~  
19 ~~automatic system.~~

20  
21 ~~(B) Placement and assessment of an EKG. Instruction shall include the~~  
22 ~~adjustment of such equipment.~~

23  
24 ~~(C) Monitoring and assessment of heart sounds with a pretracheal/precordial~~  
25 ~~stethoscope.~~

26  
27 ~~(k) With respect to monitoring lung/respiratory sounds with pretracheal/precordial stethoscope~~  
28 ~~and monitoring oxygen saturation end tidal CO<sub>2</sub> with pulse oximeter and capnograph:~~

29  
30 ~~(1) Didactic instruction shall contain the following:~~

31  
32 ~~(A) Characteristics of pretracheal/precordial stethoscope, pulse oximeter and~~  
33 ~~capnograph for respiration monitoring.~~

34  
35 ~~(B) Review of anatomy and physiology of respiratory system to include the nose,~~  
36 ~~mouth, pharynx, epiglottis, larynx, trachea, bronchi, bronchioles, and alveolus.~~

37  
38 ~~(C) Characteristics of respiratory monitoring/lung sounds: mechanism of~~  
39 ~~respiration, composition of respiratory gases, oxygen saturation.~~

40  
41 ~~(D) Characteristics of manual and automatic respiration assessment.~~

42  
43 ~~(E) Procedure for using a pretracheal/precordial stethoscope for respiration~~  
44 ~~monitoring.~~

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1  
2 ~~(F) Procedure for using and maintaining pulse oximeter for monitoring oxygen~~  
3 ~~saturation.~~

4  
5 ~~(G) Procedure for use and maintenance of capnograph.~~

6  
7 ~~(H) Characteristics for monitoring blood and skin color and other related factors.~~

8  
9 ~~(I) Procedures and use of an oxygen delivery system.~~

10  
11 ~~(J) Characteristics of airway management to include armamentaria and use.~~

12  
13 ~~(2) Preclinical instruction: Utilizing another student or staff person, the student shall~~  
14 ~~demonstrate proficiency in each of the following tasks during training and shall then be~~  
15 ~~eligible to complete an examination on this Section.~~

16  
17 ~~(A) Assessment of respiration rates.~~

18  
19 ~~(B) Monitoring and assessment of lung sounds and ventilation with a~~  
20 ~~pretracheal/precordial stethoscope.~~

21  
22 ~~(C) Monitoring oxygen saturation with a pulse oximeter.~~

23  
24 ~~(D) Use of an oxygen delivery system.~~

25  
26 ~~(3) Clinical instruction: Utilizing patients, the student shall demonstrate proficiency in~~  
27 ~~each of the following tasks, under supervision by faculty or instructional staff as~~  
28 ~~described in Section 1070.8(a)(3), and shall then be eligible to complete an examination~~  
29 ~~on this Section.~~

30  
31 ~~(A) Assessment of respiration rates.~~

32  
33 ~~(B) Monitoring and assessment of lung sounds and ventilation with a~~  
34 ~~pretracheal/precordial stethoscope.~~

35  
36 ~~(C) Monitoring oxygen saturation with a pulse oximeter.~~

37  
38 ~~(D) Use of an oxygen delivery system.~~

39  
40 ~~(I) With respect to drug identification and draw:~~

41  
42 ~~(1) Didactic instruction shall contain:~~  
43

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 ~~(A) Characteristics of syringes and needles: use, types, gauges, lengths, and~~  
2 ~~components.~~

3  
4 ~~(B) Characteristics of drug, medication, and fluid storage units: use, type,~~  
5 ~~components, identification of label including generic and brand names, strength,~~  
6 ~~potential adverse reactions, expiration date, and contraindications.~~

7  
8 ~~(C) Characteristics of drug draw: armamentaria, label verification, ampule and~~  
9 ~~vial preparation, and drug withdrawal techniques.~~

10  
11 ~~(2) Laboratory instruction: The student shall demonstrate proficiency in the withdrawal~~  
12 ~~of fluids from a vial or ampule in the amount specified by faculty or instructional staff~~  
13 ~~and shall then be eligible to complete a practical examination.~~

14  
15 ~~(3) Clinical instruction: The student shall demonstrate proficiency in the evaluation of~~  
16 ~~vial or container labels for identification of content, dosage, and strength and in the~~  
17 ~~withdrawal of fluids from a vial or ampule in the amount specified by faculty or~~  
18 ~~instructional staff as described in Section 1070.8(a)(3), and shall then be eligible to~~  
19 ~~complete an examination on this Section.~~

20  
21 ~~(m) With respect to adding drugs, medications, and fluids to IV lines:~~

22  
23 ~~(1) Didactic instruction shall contain:~~

24  
25 ~~(A) Characteristics of adding drugs, medications, and fluids to IV lines in the~~  
26 ~~presence of a licensed dentist.~~

27  
28 ~~(B) Armamentaria.~~

29  
30 ~~(C) Procedures for adding drugs, medications, and fluids, including dosage and~~  
31 ~~frequency.~~

32  
33 ~~(D) Procedures for adding drugs, medications, and fluids by IV bolus.~~

34  
35 ~~(E) Characteristics of patient observation for signs and symptoms of drug~~  
36 ~~response.~~

37  
38 ~~(2) Laboratory instruction: The student shall demonstrate proficiency in adding fluids to~~  
39 ~~an existing IV line on a venipuncture training arm or in a simulated environment, and~~  
40 ~~shall then be eligible to complete a practical examination on this Section.~~

41  
42 ~~(3) Clinical instruction: The student shall demonstrate proficiency in adding fluids to~~  
43 ~~existing IV lines in the presence of course faculty or instructional staff as described in~~

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1       ~~Section 1070.8(a)(3), and shall then be eligible to complete an examination on this~~  
2       ~~Section.~~

3  
4       ~~(n) With respect to the removal of IV lines:~~

5  
6           ~~(1) Didactic instruction shall include overview and procedures for the removal of an IV~~  
7           ~~line.~~

8  
9           ~~(2) Laboratory instruction: The student shall demonstrate proficiency on a venipuncture~~  
10          ~~training arm or in a simulated environment for IV removal, and shall then be eligible for~~  
11          ~~a practical examination.~~

12  
13          ~~(3) Clinical instruction: The student shall demonstrate proficiency in removing IV lines in~~  
14          ~~the presence of course faculty or instructional staff as described in Section 1070.8(a)(3),~~  
15          ~~and shall then be eligible to complete an examination on this Section.~~

16  
17       ~~(o) Each student shall pass a written examination that reflects the curriculum content, which~~  
18       ~~may be administered at intervals throughout the course as determined by the course director.~~

19  
20       ~~(p) To maintain approval, programs approved prior to the effective date of these regulations~~  
21       ~~shall submit to the Board a completed "Notice of Compliance with New Requirements for~~  
22       ~~Dental Sedation Assistant Permit Courses (New 10/10)", hereby incorporated by reference,~~  
23       ~~within ninety (90) days of the effective date of these regulations.~~

24  
25       Note: Authority cited: Section 1614, Business and Professions Code. Reference: Sections  
26       1750.4, 1750.5 and 1752.4, Business and Professions Code.

27  
28       **CCR §1070.9: Radiation Safety Course**

29  
30       (a) A radiation safety course is one that has as its primary purpose providing theory,  
31       laboratory and clinical application in radiographic techniques. A single standard of care  
32       shall be maintained and the Board shall approve only those courses which continuously  
33       maintain a high quality standard of instruction. A single standard of care shall be maintained  
34       and the board shall approve and continue to approve only programmatic curricula and stand-  
35       alone courses which continuously maintain a high quality standard of instruction.

36  
37       (b) A course provider applying for initial approval shall submit an application for approval,  
38       hereby incorporated by reference (insert date), accompanied by the designated, non-  
39       refundable fee as defined in CCR Section 1022. Consistent with CCR Section 1070, the board  
40       may approve or deny approval after evaluation of all components of the course have been  
41       performed.

42  
43       (c) Continuation of approval will be contingent upon continued compliance with CCR Sections  
44       1070, 1070.1 and all requirements as required herein.

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1  
2 (d) General Provisions: Adequate provisions for the supervision and operation of the course  
3 shall be made in compliance with this Article and the following:

4  
5 (1) Unless otherwise incorporated in a board-approved registered dental assisting  
6 program, providers shall require evidence that all course pre-requisites have been met  
7 prior to acceptance of the participant to include current certification in basic life  
8 support, completion of an 8-hour board-approved course in infection control, and a 2-  
9 hour board-approved course in dental assisting jurisprudence.

10  
11 (2) When instruction is incorporated in a registered dental assisting program, students  
12 shall have completed instruction in infection control, basic chairside skills, anatomy,  
13 tooth morphology and shall have obtained certification in basic life support, as defined  
14 herein, prior to the start of instruction in radiation safety.

15  
16 (3) The requirements for the quantity, qualifications and responsibilities of the course  
17 director and all faculty or instructional staff, as defined in CCR Sections 1070 and 1070.1,  
18 shall be adhered to at all times.

19  
20 (4) Additionally, all patient's or their guardian shall complete a health history form with  
21 consent acknowledging the procedure is being performed by a student of the course or  
22 program. Such documentation shall be maintained in the student records. When a  
23 health history form is completed as a condition of the course requirements in an  
24 extramural facility, such form shall be made available to the program or course by the  
25 supervising licensed dentist.

26  
27 (e) Facilities and Equipment:

28  
29 (1) Adequate supplies, materials and provisions for instruction in radiation safety shall  
30 be provided in compliance with the requirements of CCR Section 1070.

31  
32 (2) There shall be a sufficient number of safe, adequate, and educationally conducive  
33 lecture classrooms and operatories in compliance with the requirements of CCR Section  
34 1070.

35  
36 (3) In addition to the facility requirements defined in CCR Section 1070, the facility used  
37 for laboratory/pre-clinical instruction shall be deemed adequate if it is properly  
38 equipped with supplies and equipment for practical work and includes, for every six  
39 students, at least the following:

40  
41 (A) One functioning radiography (X-ray) machine which is adequately filtered and  
42 collimated that is equipped with the appropriate position-indicating devices for  
43 each technique being taught, and is properly registered and permitted in  
44 compliance with the Department of Health Services and the California Radiation



**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1           Safety Regulations (Title 17, Cal. Code of Regulations, commencing with Section  
2           30100);

3  
4           (B) One (1) X-ray training mannequin head designed for instruction in  
5           radiographic techniques per X-ray unit; and

6  
7           (C) One (1) lead impregnated adult-size X-ray apron with cervical (thyroid) collar,  
8           either attached or detached from the apron, per X-ray unit.

9  
10          (4) The area shall be deemed adequate if it is of sufficient size to accommodate  
11          students' needs in learning and is properly equipped with supplies and equipment for  
12          practical work which may include processing and viewing equipment or any combination  
13          thereof. Such facility requirements may be deemed met if computer-based equipment  
14          for digital radiographic procedures is solely or in part utilized within the program or  
15          course facility and where such equipment may be located in the operatory area where  
16          exposures will occur.

17  
18          (5) The choice of image receptor for laboratory, pre-clinical and clinical experiences may  
19          be either traditional film or digital sensor or any combination thereof as determined by  
20          the program and course provider. Nothing herein shall require a dental assisting  
21          program or course provider to obtain computerized equipment for the purposes of  
22          instruction or demonstration.

23  
24          (6) X-ray exposure areas shall provide protection to patients, students, faculty and  
25          observers in full compliance with applicable statutes and regulations.

26  
27          (7) All disinfection and sterilization procedures specified in CCR Section 1005 shall be  
28          incorporated in the course content and followed during all laboratory simulated-clinical  
29          and clinical experiences. Adequate, cleaning, disinfecting, and sterilizing facilities shall  
30          be provided.

31  
32          (f) **Course Duration:** A course in radiation safety shall be of sufficient duration, but in no event  
33          less than 32 hours including at least 16 hours of didactic instruction, at least 8 hours of laboratory  
34          instruction, and at least 8 hours of supervised clinical instruction for the student to obtain  
35          applicable theory in didactic instruction, laboratory instruction, and clinical experience to achieve  
36          minimum competence in the various protocols and procedures used in the application of dental  
37          radiographic techniques and radiation safety.

38  
39          **(g) Course Curriculum and Examination:**

40  
41          (1) A detailed course outline shall be established and maintained consistent with the  
42          requirements of CCR Section 1070 and shall be provided to students prior to the start of  
43          instruction.

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 (2) General course objectives and specific instructional unit objectives shall be stated in  
2 writing and shall include theoretical aspects of each subject as well as practical  
3 application. The theoretical aspects of the course shall provide the content necessary for  
4 students to make judgments regarding radiation safety.

5  
6 (3) Objective evaluation criteria shall be used for measuring student progress toward  
7 attainment of specific course objectives. Students shall be provided with specific  
8 performance objectives and the evaluation criteria that will be used for all aspects of the  
9 curriculum.

10  
11 (4) Each student shall pass a written examination which reflects the curriculum content.

12  
13 (5) Each student shall pass a clinical examination.

14  
15 **(h) Didactic Instruction.** Areas of didactic instruction shall include, at a minimum, the following  
16 as they relate to exposure, processing and evaluation of dental radiographs:

17  
18 (1) Radiation physics and biology;

19  
20 (2) Radiation protection and safety;

21  
22 (3) Recognition of normal anatomical landmarks, structures, hard and soft tissues,  
23 normal and abnormal conditions of the oral cavity as they relate to dental radiographs;

24  
25 (4) Radiograph exposure and processing techniques;

26  
27 (5) Radiograph mounting or sequencing, and viewing, including anatomical landmarks of  
28 the oral cavity;

29  
30 (6) Intraoral techniques and dental radiograph armamentaria, including holding devices  
31 and image receptors;

32  
33 (7) Intraoral and extraoral examination including principles of exposure, methods of  
34 retention and evaluation;

35  
36 (8) Proper use of patient protection devices and personal protective equipment for  
37 operator use;

38  
39 (9) Identification and correction of faulty radiographs;

40  
41 (10) Introduction to contemporary exposure techniques including the use of

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 computerized digital radiography and extraoral imaging that may include panographs or  
2 cone-beam imaging;

3  
4 (11) Infection control procedures in compliance with the Board’s Minimum Standards  
5 for Infection Control (CCR Section 1005);

6  
7 (12) Radiographic records management;

8  
9 (13) Identification and recognition of common errors in techniques and processing for  
10 intra and extra oral exposures;

11  
12 (14) Identification of various extra oral techniques, machine types, and uses; and

13  
14 (15) Introduction to techniques and exposure guidelines for special exposures to include,  
15 but not limited to pediatric, edentulous, partially edentulous, endodontic and patients  
16 with special needs.

17  
18 (i) **Laboratory Instruction.** All laboratory instruction and performances shall only occur in  
19 accordance with CCR Sections 1070 and 1070.1. Sufficient hours of laboratory instruction and  
20 experiences shall ensure that a student successfully completes, on an x-ray training mannequin  
21 head only, at least the procedures set forth below utilizing an image receptor deemed appropriate  
22 by the course director:

23  
24 (1) Two (2) full mouth periapical series, consisting of at least 18 radiographs each, four (4)  
25 of which shall be bitewings;

26  
27 (2) Two horizontal or vertical bitewing series, consisting of at least four (4) radiographs  
28 each;

29  
30 (3) Developing, digitizing or processing, and mounting or sequencing of exposed  
31 radiographs;

32  
33 (4) Completion of student and instructor written evaluation of radiographs identifying  
34 errors, causes of errors, corrections and, if applicable, the number of re-exposures  
35 necessary for successful completion of a series to minimum competency.

36  
37 (A) A laboratory procedure has been successfully completed only if each series of  
38 radiographs is evaluated and deemed to be of diagnostic quality.

39  
40 (B) Successful completion of all laboratory competencies shall occur prior to  
41 clinical instruction and experiences.

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1  
2 **(j) Clinical Instruction and Evaluation.** As part of an organized program of instruction clinical  
3 instruction shall include clinical performances on human subjects as set forth herein.

4  
5 (1) Successful completion of a minimum of four (4) full mouth periapical series,  
6 consisting of at least 18 radiographs each, four (4) of which shall be bitewings. All  
7 exposures made on human subjects shall only be made using diagnostic criteria  
8 established during the clinical instructional period and shall in no event exceed three (3)  
9 re-exposures per subject per series.

10  
11 (2) Successful developing or processing, and mounting or sequencing of exposed human  
12 subject radiographs;

13  
14 (3) Completion of student and clinical supervisor written evaluations of each  
15 radiographic series identifying errors, causes of error, and correction and, if applicable,  
16 the number of re-exposures necessary for successful completion of a series to clinical  
17 competency.

18  
19 (4) One (1) full-mouth clinical series shall serve a final clinical examination.

20  
21 **(k) Written Examinations.** Prior to certification and completion of the course, the student shall  
22 demonstrate successfully each of the following:

23  
24 (1) Completion of written examinations in California radiation health and safety and the  
25 principles of dental radiographs shall occur prior to laboratory instruction, laboratory  
26 competencies, and clinical instruction and experiences.

27  
28 (2) The written examinations shall include questions specific to items addressed in  
29 California Code of Regulations, Title 17, Division 1, Chapter 5, Subchapter 4, Group 3,  
30 Article 4 (Section 30305 et seq.) relative to the special requirements for the use of x-ray  
31 in the healing arts.

32  
33 **(l) Extramural Dental Facilities for Used for Radiographic Performances.** Extramural dental  
34 facilities may be utilized by a course for the purposes of radiographic clinical competencies.  
35 Clinical instruction and oversight shall be performed under the direct supervision of a licensed  
36 dentist who shall deem the radiographs necessary by written prescription. Didactic and  
37 laboratory instruction shall be provided only by course faculty or instructional staff prior to  
38 clinical performances and shall not be provided in an extramural dental facility.

39  
40 (1) The course director, or a designated faculty member, shall be responsible for  
41 selecting a extramural dental facility and evaluating student competence before the

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1       clinical assignment.

2  
3       (2) Prior to student assignment in an extramural dental facility, the course director, or a  
4 designated faculty or instructional staff member, shall orient all supervising dentists who  
5 shall provide basic technical assistance, evaluation, and oversight of the student in the  
6 clinical setting. Orientation shall include, at a minimum, the objectives of the course, the  
7 student's preparation for the clinical assignment, and a review of procedures and criteria  
8 to be used by the licensed dentist in the extramural dental facility in evaluating the  
9 student during the assignment

10  
11       (3) Programs and courses using extramural dental faculty for dental radiographic clinical  
12 experiences shall provide to the Board, upon request or renewal of provider status,  
13 copies of all contracts of affiliation and documentation demonstrating compliance with  
14 this Section.

15  
16       (4) There shall be a written contract of affiliation with each extramural dental facility  
17 utilized by a course. Such contract shall describe the settings in which the facility will be  
18 used, cancellation terms and conditions, and shall provide that the facility has the  
19 necessary equipment and armamentaria appropriate for the procedures to be  
20 performed and that such equipment and armamentaria are in safe operating condition.

21  
22       (m) **Certificate of Completion.** Upon successful completion of the course, students shall receive  
23 a certificate consistent with the requirements defined in CCR Section 1070.

24  
25       (n) **Notice of Compliance.** To maintain approval, courses approved prior to the effective date of  
26 these regulations shall submit to the Board a completed "Notice of Compliance with New  
27 Requirements for Radiation Safety Certification Courses" (insert date), hereby incorporated by  
28 reference, within ninety (90) days of the effective date of these regulations.

29  
30       **§ 1071. Approval of Registered Dental Assistant in Extended Functions (RDAEF) Educational**  
31 **Programs.**

32  
33       In addition to the requirements of California Code of Regulations (Cal. Code Regs.), Title 16,  
34 Sections 1070 and 1070.1, the following criteria shall be met by an RDAEF educational program  
35 to secure and maintain approval by the Board.

36  
37       (a) RDAEF educational programs in California shall apply for and receive Board approval prior to  
38 operation. The Board may approve, provisionally approve, or deny approval of any such  
39 program.

40  
41       (1) A program applying for approval to teach all of the duties specified in Business and  
42 Professions Code, Section 1753.5 shall comply with all of the requirements of this  
43 Section.

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1  
2 (2) A program applying for approval to teach RDAEFs licensed on or before January 1,  
3 2010 the additional duties specified in Business and Professions Code Section 1753.6  
4 shall comply with all of the requirements of this Section, except as follows:

5  
6 (A) The program shall be no less than 318 hours, including at least 76 hours of  
7 didactic instruction, at least 186 hours of laboratory instruction, and at least 56  
8 hours of clinical instruction.

9  
10 (B) Students shall not be required to complete instruction related to the  
11 placement of gingival retraction cord, the taking of final impressions for  
12 permanent indirect restorations, or the fitting of endodontic master points and  
13 accessory points.

14  
15 (3) A RDAEF program provider applying for approval shall submit to the Board a  
16 completed "Application for Approval of Registered Dental Assistant Program (New  
17 INSERT DATE)", which is hereby incorporated by reference, accompanied by a non-  
18 refundable processing fee of \$ \_\_\_\_.

19  
20 (4) The Board may withdraw its approval of a program at any time, after giving the  
21 program provider written notice setting forth its reason for withdrawal and after  
22 affording a reasonable opportunity to respond within 30 calendar days. Approval may  
23 be withdrawn for failure to comply with the provisions of the Dental Practice Act or the  
24 Board's regulations.

25  
26 (b) Prerequisites. In order to be admitted to the program, each student shall possess a valid,  
27 active, and current license as a registered dental assistant issued by the Board and shall submit  
28 documentary evidence of successful completion of a Board-approved pit and fissure sealant  
29 course prior to graduation from an RDAEF program.

30  
31 (c) Program Faculty. In addition to the requirements of Cal. Code Regs., Title 16, Sections 1070  
32 and 1070.1, all faculty members shall have completed a course or certification program in  
33 educational methodology of at least six (6) hours unless he or she holds any one (1) of the  
34 following: a degree in education, a Ryan Designated Subjects Vocational Education Teaching  
35 Credential, a Standard Designated Subjects Teaching Credential, or, a Community College  
36 Teaching Credential. Each faculty member shall complete a course or certification program in  
37 educational methodology within six (6) months of employment. The program director or  
38 designated administrator shall be responsible to obtain and maintain records of each faculty  
39 member showing evidence of having met this requirement.

40  
41 (d) Program Director. The program director, who may also be an instructor, shall possess a  
42 valid, active, and current license issued by the Board or the Dental Hygiene Committee of  
43 California, shall have been licensed for a minimum of two (2) years, and possess the  
44 experience in the subject matter he or she is teaching. The course director shall provide

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 guidance and be responsible for the administration of the course. Specifically, the course  
2 director shall be responsible for fulfilling all the requirements listed in Cal. Code Regs., Title 16,  
3 Section 1070(b).

4  
5 (e) Length of Program.

6  
7 (1) The program shall be of sufficient duration for the student to develop minimum  
8 competence in all of the duties that RDAEFs are authorized to perform, but in no event  
9 less than 410 hours, including at least 100 hours of didactic instruction, at least 206  
10 hours of laboratory instruction, and at least 104 hours of clinical instruction. All  
11 laboratory and simulated clinical instruction shall be provided under the direct  
12 supervision of program staff. Clinical instruction shall be provided under the direct  
13 supervision of a licensed dentist and may be completed in an extramural dental facility  
14 as defined in Cal. Code Regs., Title 16, Section 1070.1(c).

15  
16 (2) In the event a program has obtained approval to instruct the content for Interim  
17 Therapeutic Restoration Certification, the program shall incorporate such training into  
18 the RDAEF program curriculum and increase the total hours in accordance with  
19 applicable regulations.

20  
21 (f) The following requirements are in addition to the requirements of Cal. Code Regs., Title 16,  
22 Sections 1070 and 1070.1:

23  
24 (1) Minimum requirements for equipment and armamentaria:

25  
26 (A) Laboratory facilities with individual seating stations for each student and  
27 equipped with air/water syringe, hand piece connections, suction or electric  
28 driven rotary instrumentation capability. Each station or operatory shall allow an  
29 articulated typodont to be mounted in a simulated head position.

30  
31 (B) Clinical simulation facilities that provide simulated patient heads mounted in  
32 appropriate position and accommodating an articulated typodont in an enclosed  
33 intraoral environment, or mounted on a dental chair in a dental operatory.  
34 Clinical simulation spaces shall be sufficient to permit one (1) simulation space  
35 for each two (2) students at any one (1) time.

36  
37 (C) Articulated typodonts of both deciduous and permanent dentitions with  
38 flexible gingival tissues and with prepared teeth for each procedure to be  
39 performed in the laboratory and clinical simulation settings. One (1) of each type  
40 of typodont is required for each student.

41  
42 (D) A selection of restorative instruments and adjunct materials for all  
43 procedures that RDAEFs are authorized to perform.

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 (E) Notwithstanding Section 1070, there shall be at least one (1) operator for  
2 every two (2) students who are simultaneously engaged in clinical instruction.

3  
4 (g) Areas of instruction shall include, at a minimum, the instruction specified in subdivisions (h)  
5 to (o), inclusive, and the following didactic instruction:

6  
7 (1) The following instruction as it relates to each of the procedures that RDAEFs are  
8 authorized to perform: restorative and prosthetic treatment review; charting; patient  
9 education; legal requirements; indications and contraindications; problem solving  
10 techniques; laboratory, preclinical, and clinical criteria and evaluation; and infection  
11 control protocol implementation.

12  
13 (2) Dental science, including dental and oral anatomy, histology, oral pathology, normal  
14 or abnormal anatomical and physiological tooth descriptions, tooth morphology, basic  
15 microbiology relating to infection control, and occlusion. "Occlusion" is the review of  
16 articulation of maxillary and mandibular arches in maximum intercuspation.

17  
18 (3) Characteristics and manipulation of dental materials related to each procedure.

19  
20 (4) Armamentaria for all procedures.

21  
22 (5) Principles, techniques, criteria, and evaluation for performing each procedure,  
23 including implementation of infection control protocols.

24  
25 (6) Tooth isolation and matrix methodology review.

26  
27 (h) General laboratory instruction shall include:

28  
29 (1) Application of tooth isolation methods in both maxillary and mandibular arches and  
30 with four (4) experiences on both deciduous and permanent dentitions.

31  
32 (2) Matrix placement for amalgam, and adhesive-based restorative material restorations  
33 with three (3) experiences for each material.

34  
35 (3) Base, liner, and etchant placement on three (3) teeth.

36  
37 (3) Base, liner, and etchant placement on three teeth.

38  
39 (i) With respect to preliminary evaluation of the patient's oral health, including charting of  
40 existing conditions excluding periodontal assessment as it relates to RDAEF functions, intraoral  
41 and extraoral evaluation of soft tissue, classifying occlusion, and myofunctional evaluation:

42  
43 (1) Didactic instruction shall contain the following:  
44



**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 (A) Normal anatomical structures: oral cavity proper, vestibule, and lips.

2  
3 (B) Deviations from normal to hard tissue abnormalities to soft tissue  
4 abnormalities.

5  
6 (C) Overview of classifications of occlusion and myofunction.

7  
8 (D) Sequence of oral inspection: armamentaria, general patient assessment,  
9 review of medical history form, review of dental history form, oral cavity mouth-  
10 mirror inspection, and charting existing conditions.

11  
12 (2) Preclinical instruction shall include performing an oral inspection on at least two (2)  
13 other students.

14  
15 (3) Clinical instruction shall include performing an oral inspection on at least two (2)  
16 patients.

17  
18 (j) With respect to sizing, fitting, and cementing endodontic master points and accessory points:

19  
20 (1) Didactic instruction shall include the following:

21  
22 (A) Review of objectives, canal preparation, filling of root canal space, including  
23 the role of the RDAEF as preparatory to condensation which is to be performed  
24 by the licensed dentist.

25  
26 (B) Description and goals of filling technique using lateral condensation  
27 techniques.

28  
29 (C) Principles and techniques of fitting and cementing master points and  
30 accessory points.

31  
32 (2) Laboratory instruction shall include fitting and cementing master points and  
33 accessory points on extracted teeth or simulated teeth with canals with a minimum of  
34 two (2) experiences.-This instruction shall not include obturator-based techniques or  
35 other techniques that employ condensation.

36  
37 (3) Simulated clinical instruction shall include fitting and cementing master points and  
38 accessory points with extracted or simulated teeth. Simulated clinical instruction shall  
39 include fitting and cementing master points and accessory points in at least four (4)  
40 teeth.

41  
42 k) With respect to gingival retraction, general instruction shall include:

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 (1) Review of characteristics of tissue management techniques as they relate to  
2 prosthodontic procedures.

3  
4 (2) Description, principles and goals of tissue management as it relates to prosthodontic  
5 procedures.

6  
7 (l) With respect to final impressions for permanent indirect and toothborne restorations:

8  
9 (1) Didactic instruction shall contain the following:

10  
11 (A) Review of characteristics of impression material and tray placement.

12  
13 (B) Description and goals of impression taking for permanent indirect  
14 restorations and toothborne prosthesis.

15  
16 (C) Principles, techniques, criteria, and evaluation of impression taking for  
17 permanent indirect restorations and toothborne prosthesis.

18  
19 (2) Laboratory instruction shall include the following:

20  
21 (A) Tissue management for prosthodontic procedures and final impressions for  
22 permanent indirect restorations, including impression taking of prepared teeth  
23 in maxillary and mandibular arches, once per arch.

24  
25 (B) Impressions for toothborne removable prostheses, including, at a minimum,  
26 taking a total of four (4) impressions on maxillary and mandibular arches with  
27 simulated partially edentulous sites.

28  
29 (3) Clinical instruction shall include taking final impressions on five (5) prosthodontic  
30 procedure patients which shall include tissue management procedures.

31  
32 (m) With respect to placing, contouring, finishing, and adjusting direct restorations:

33  
34 (1) Didactic instruction shall contain the following:

35  
36 (A) Review of cavity preparation factors and restorative material.

37  
38 (B) Characteristics and manipulation of direct filling materials.

39  
40 (C) Amalgam restoration placement, carving, adjusting and finishing, which  
41 includes principles, techniques, criteria and evaluation, and description and goals  
42 of amalgam placement, adjusting and finishing in children and adults.

43

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1           (D) Currently utilized adhesive-based restoration placement, adjusting,  
2           contouring and finishing, which includes, principles, techniques, criteria and  
3           evaluation, and description and goals of adhesive-based restorations, placement  
4           and contouring in children and adults.

5  
6           (2) Laboratory instruction shall include placement, finish and adjustment of 100  
7           restorations in prepared teeth. The restorations shall include both maxillary,  
8           mandibular, permanent and deciduous teeth, and both metallic and adhesive-based  
9           materials. Amalgam material shall include placement, finish and adjustment of Class I,  
10           II, and V restorations. Adhesive-based materials shall include placement, finish and  
11           adjustment of Class I, II, III, IV and V restorations.

12  
13           (3) Simulated clinical instruction shall include placement, finish and adjustment of 900  
14           restorations in prepared teeth. The restorations shall include both maxillary,  
15           mandibular, permanent and deciduous teeth, and both metallic and adhesive-based  
16           materials. Amalgam material shall include placement, finish and adjustment of Class I,  
17           II, and V restorations. Adhesive-based materials shall include placement, finish and  
18           adjustment of Class I, II, III, IV and V restorations. A student shall show competency in  
19           amalgam based material placement, finish and adjustment based on criteria-reference  
20           completion standards prior to any clinical instruction and application of these  
21           procedures.

22  
23           (4) Clinical instruction shall require proficient completion of placing, contouring and  
24           finishing at least 20 direct restorations in prepared permanent teeth. At least five (5) of  
25           each restorative classification of I, II, III and V are required.

26  
27           (A) At least 50 percent of the experiences shall be Class II restorations using  
28           adhesive-based materials.

29  
30           (B) At least 20 percent of the experiences shall be Class V restorations using  
31           adhesive-based materials.

32  
33           (C) Students who complete the 20 restorations and meet all the instructional  
34           requirements of this Section may complete additional Class I, II, III, IV or V  
35           restorations as deemed appropriate for program success.

36  
37           (n) With respect to polishing and contouring existing amalgam restorations:

38  
39           (1) Didactic instruction shall include principles, techniques, criteria and evaluation, and  
40           description and goals of amalgam polishing and contouring in children and adults.

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1       (3) Simulated clinical instruction shall include experience in the polishing and contouring  
2       of Class I, II, and V amalgam restorations in one (1) prepared tooth for each  
3       classification.

4  
5       (o) With respect to adjusting and cementing permanent indirect restorations:

6  
7       (1) Didactic instruction shall contain the following:

8  
9               (A) Review of fixed prosthodontics related to classification and materials for  
10              permanent indirect restorations, general crown preparation for permanent  
11              indirect restorations, and laboratory fabrication of permanent indirect  
12              restorations.

13  
14              (B) Interocclusal registrations for fixed prosthesis, including principles,  
15              techniques, criteria, and evaluation.

16  
17              (C) Permanent indirect restoration placement, adjustment, and  
18              cementation/bonding, including principles, techniques, criteria, and evaluation.

19  
20       (2) Laboratory instruction shall include:

21  
22              (A) Completion of two (2) interocclusal registrations.

23  
24              (B) Fitting, adjustment, and cementation/bonding of permanent indirect  
25              restorations on a minimum of two (2) posterior crowns.

26  
27       (3) Clinical experience for interocclusal registrations shall be performed on four (4)  
28       patients who are concurrently having final impressions recorded for permanent indirect  
29       restorations.

30  
31              (A) Clinical instruction shall include fitting, adjustment, and  
32              cementation/bonding of permanent indirect restorations on at least two (2)  
33              teeth.

34  
35       (p) Examination. Each student shall pass a written examination that reflects the curriculum  
36       content, which may be administered at intervals throughout the course as determined by the  
37       course director.

38  
39       (q) Notice of Compliance. To maintain approval, programs approved prior to the effective date  
40       of these regulations shall submit to the Board a completed "Notice of Compliance with New  
41       Requirements for Registered Dental Assistant in Extended Functions Educational Programs  
42       (New INSERT DATE)", hereby incorporated by reference, within 90 days of the effective date of  
43       these regulations.

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 (r) Facilities and Resources. Facilities shall provide each student with sufficient opportunity,  
2 with instructor supervision, to develop minimum competency in all duties that registered  
3 dental assistants in extended functions are authorized to perform. The following requirements  
4 are in addition to those contained in Cal. Code of Regs., Title 16, Sections 1070 and 1070.1:

5  
6 (1) Facilities and operatories shall be in compliance with the requirements of Cal. Code  
7 of Regs., Title 16, Section 1070 (e)(1)(A)(B) and (e)(2). Facilities shall be in compliance  
8 with the Board's Minimum Standards for Infection Control (Cal. Code of Regs., Title 16,  
9 Section 1005).

10  
11 (2) Provision shall be made for reasonable access to current and diverse dental and  
12 medical reference texts, current journals, audiovisual materials, and other necessary  
13 resources. Library holdings, which may include, in total or in part, access through the  
14 Internet, shall include materials relating to all subject areas of the program curriculum.

15  
16 (s) Certificate of Completion. In addition to the requirements of Cal. Code of Regs., Title 16,  
17 Section 1070 subdivision (e), two (2) original copies of a certificate, diploma, or other evidence  
18 of completion shall be issued to each student within 30 days of successful completion of the  
19 program.

20  
21 ~~(a) All new Registered Dental Assistant in Extended Functions (RDAEF) educational programs~~  
22 ~~shall apply for and receive approval prior to operation. The Board may approve, provisionally~~  
23 ~~approve, or deny approval of any such program. The Board may, in lieu of conducting its own~~  
24 ~~investigation, accept the findings of any commission or accreditation agency approved by the~~  
25 ~~Board and adopt those findings as its own.~~

26  
27 ~~(b) In addition to the requirements of Cal. Code Regs., Title 16, Sections 1070 and 1070.1, the~~  
28 ~~following criteria shall be met by an RDAEF educational program to secure and maintain~~  
29 ~~approval by the Board.~~

30  
31 ~~(1) A program applying for approval to teach all of the duties specified in Business and~~  
32 ~~Professions Code Section 1753.5 shall comply with all of the requirements of this~~  
33 ~~Section.~~

34  
35 ~~(2) A program applying for approval to teach RDAEFs licensed on or before January 1,~~  
36 ~~2010 the additional duties specified in Business and Professions Code Section 1753.6~~  
37 ~~shall comply with all of the requirements of this Section, except as follows:~~

38  
39 ~~(A) The program shall be no less than 318 hours, including at least 76 hours of~~  
40 ~~didactic instruction, at least 186 hours of laboratory instruction, and at least 56~~  
41 ~~hours of clinical instruction.~~

42  
43 ~~(B) Students shall not be required to complete instruction related to the~~  
44 ~~placement of gingival retraction cord, the taking of final impressions for~~

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1           ~~permanent indirect restorations, or the fitting of endodontic master points and~~  
2           ~~accessory points.~~

3  
4           ~~(c) In order to be admitted to the program, each student shall possess a valid, active, and~~  
5           ~~current license as a registered dental assistant issued by the Board and shall submit~~  
6           ~~documentary evidence of successful completion of a Board approved pit and fissure sealant~~  
7           ~~course.~~

8  
9           ~~(d) In addition to the requirements of Sections 1070 and 1070.1, all faculty members~~  
10           ~~responsible for clinical evaluation shall have completed a course or certification program in~~  
11           ~~educational methodology of at least six (6) hours by January 1, 2012, unless he or she holds any~~  
12           ~~one of the following: a postgraduate degree in education, a Ryan Designated Subjects~~  
13           ~~Vocational Education Teaching Credential, a Standard Designated Subjects Teaching Credential,~~  
14           ~~or, a Community College Teaching Credential. Each faculty member employed after January 1,~~  
15           ~~2012, shall complete a course or certification program in educational methodology within six~~  
16           ~~months of employment. The program director or designated administrator shall be responsible~~  
17           ~~to obtain and maintain records of each faculty member showing evidence of having met this~~  
18           ~~requirement.~~

19  
20           ~~(e) The program shall be of sufficient duration for the student to develop minimum competence~~  
21           ~~in all of the duties that RDAEFs are authorized to perform, but in no event less than 410 hours,~~  
22           ~~including at least 100 hours of didactic instruction, at least 206 hours of laboratory instruction,~~  
23           ~~and at least 104 hours of clinical instruction. All laboratory and simulated clinical instruction~~  
24           ~~shall be provided under the direct supervision of program staff. Clinical instruction shall be~~  
25           ~~provided under the direct supervision of a licensed dentist and may be completed in an~~  
26           ~~extramural dental facility as defined in Section 1070.1(c).~~

27  
28           ~~(f) The following requirements are in addition to the requirements of Sections 1070 and 1070.1:~~

29  
30           ~~(1) Minimum requirements for equipment and armamentaria:~~

31  
32           ~~(A) Laboratory facilities with individual seating stations for each student and~~  
33           ~~equipped with air, gas and air, or electric driven rotary instrumentation~~  
34           ~~capability. Each station or operatory shall allow an articulated typodont to be~~  
35           ~~mounted in a simulated head position.~~

36  
37           ~~(B) Clinical simulation facilities that provide simulated patient heads mounted in~~  
38           ~~appropriate position and accommodating an articulated typodont in an enclosed~~  
39           ~~intraoral environment, or mounted on a dental chair in a dental operatory.~~  
40           ~~Clinical simulation spaces shall be sufficient to permit one simulation space for~~  
41           ~~each two students at any one time.~~

42  
43           ~~(C) Articulated typodonts of both deciduous and permanent dentitions with~~  
44           ~~flexible gingival tissues and with prepared teeth for each procedure to be~~

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 performed in the laboratory and clinical simulation settings. One of each type of  
2 typodont is required for each student.

3  
4 ~~(D) A selection of restorative instruments and adjunct materials for all  
5 procedures that RDAEFs are authorized to perform.~~

6  
7 ~~(2) Notwithstanding Section 1070, there shall be at least one operator for every two students  
8 who are simultaneously engaged in clinical instruction.~~

9  
10 ~~(g) Areas of instruction shall include, at a minimum, the instruction specified in subdivisions (h)  
11 to (o), inclusive, and the following didactic instruction:~~

12  
13 ~~(1) The following instruction as it relates to each of the procedures that RDAEFs are  
14 authorized to perform: restorative and prosthetic treatment review; charting; patient  
15 education; legal requirements; indications and contraindications; problem solving  
16 techniques; laboratory, preclinical, and clinical criteria and evaluation; and infection  
17 control protocol implementation.~~

18  
19 ~~(2) Dental science, including dental and oral anatomy, histology, oral pathology, normal  
20 or abnormal anatomical and physiological tooth descriptions, tooth morphology, basic  
21 microbiology relating to infection control, and occlusion. "Occlusion" is the review of  
22 articulation of maxillary and mandibular arches in maximum intercuspation.~~

23  
24 ~~(3) Characteristics and manipulation of dental materials related to each procedure.~~

25  
26 ~~(4) Armamentaria for all procedures.~~

27  
28 ~~(5) Principles, techniques, criteria, and evaluation for performing each procedure,  
29 including implementation of infection control protocols.~~

30  
31 ~~(6) Tooth isolation and matrix methodology review.~~

32  
33 ~~(h) General laboratory instruction shall include:~~

34  
35 ~~(1) Rubber dam application for tooth isolation in both maxillary and mandibular arches  
36 and for deciduous and permanent dentitions. A minimum of four experiences per arch is  
37 required, with two anterior and two posterior applications, with one of the applications  
38 used for a practical examination.~~

39  
40 ~~(2) Matrix placement for amalgam, and nonmetallic restorative material restorations in  
41 both primary and permanent dentitions, with three experiences for each cavity  
42 classification and for each material.~~

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1           ~~(3) Base, liner, and etchant placement on three posterior teeth for each base, liner, or~~  
2           ~~etchant, with one of the three teeth used for a practical examination.~~

3  
4           ~~(i) With respect to preliminary evaluation of the patient's oral health, including charting of~~  
5           ~~existing conditions excluding periodontal assessment, intraoral and extraoral evaluation of soft~~  
6           ~~tissue, classifying occlusion, and myofunctional evaluation:~~

7  
8           ~~(1) Didactic instruction shall contain the following:~~

9  
10           ~~(A) Normal anatomical structures: oral cavity proper, vestibule, and lips.~~

11           ~~(B) Deviations from normal to hard tissue abnormalities to soft tissue~~  
12           ~~abnormalities.~~

13           ~~(C) Overview of classifications of occlusion and myofunction.~~

14           ~~(D) Sequence of oral inspection: armamentaria, general patient assessment,~~  
15           ~~review of medical history form, review of dental history form, oral cavity mouth-~~  
16           ~~mirror inspection, and charting existing conditions.~~

17  
18           ~~(2) Preclinical instruction shall include performing an oral inspection on at least two~~  
19           ~~other students.~~

20  
21           ~~(3) Clinical instruction shall include performing an oral inspection on at least two~~  
22           ~~patients, with one of the two patients used for a clinical examination.~~

23  
24           ~~(j) With respect to sizing, fitting, and cementing endodontic master points and accessory points:~~

25  
26           ~~(1) Didactic instruction shall include the following:~~

27           ~~(A) Review of objectives, canal preparation, filling of root canal space, including~~  
28           ~~the role of the RDAEF as~~  
29           ~~preparatory to condensation which is to be performed by the licensed dentist.~~

30           ~~(B) Description and goals of filling technique using lateral condensation~~  
31           ~~techniques.~~

32           ~~(C) Principles and techniques of fitting and cementing master points and~~  
33           ~~accessory points using lateral condensation, including characteristics,~~  
34           ~~manipulation, use of gutta percha and related materials, and criteria for an~~  
35           ~~acceptable master and accessory points technique using lateral condensation.~~

36  
37           ~~(2) Laboratory instruction shall include fitting and cementing master points and~~  
38           ~~accessory points on extracted teeth or simulated teeth with canals in preparation for~~



**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 ~~lateral condensation by the dentist, with a minimum of two experiences each on a~~  
2 ~~posterior and anterior tooth. This instruction shall not include obturator-based~~  
3 ~~techniques or other techniques that employ condensation.~~

4  
5 ~~(3) Simulated clinical instruction shall include fitting and cementing master points and~~  
6 ~~accessory points in preparation for condensation by the dentist with extracted or~~  
7 ~~simulated teeth prepared for lateral condensation mounted in simulated patient heads~~  
8 ~~mounted in appropriate position and accommodating and articulated typodont in an~~  
9 ~~enclosed intraoral environment, or mounted on a dental chair in a dental operator.~~  
10 ~~This instruction shall not include obturator based techniques that employ condensation.~~  
11 ~~Simulated clinical instruction shall include fitting and cementing master points and~~  
12 ~~accessory points for lateral condensation by the dentist in at least four teeth, one of~~  
13 ~~which shall be used for a practical exam.~~

14  
15 (k) ~~With respect to gingival retraction, general instruction shall include:~~

16  
17 ~~(1) Review of characteristics of tissue management as it relates to gingival retraction~~  
18 ~~with cord and electrosurgery.~~

19  
20 ~~(2) Description and goals of cord retraction.~~

21  
22 ~~(3) Principles of cord retraction, including characteristics and manipulation of~~  
23 ~~epinephrine, chemical salts classification of cord, characteristics of single versus double~~  
24 ~~cord technique, and techniques and criteria for an acceptable cord retraction technique.~~

25  
26 (l) ~~With respect to final impressions for permanent indirect and toothborne restorations:~~

27  
28 ~~(1) Didactic instruction shall contain the following:~~

29  
30 ~~(A) Review of characteristics of impression material and custom.~~

31  
32 ~~(B) Description and goals of impression taking for permanent indirect~~  
33 ~~restorations and toothborne prosthesis.~~

34  
35 ~~(C) Principles, techniques, criteria, and evaluation of impression taking for~~  
36 ~~permanent indirect restorations and toothborne prosthesis.~~

37  
38 ~~(2) Laboratory instruction shall include the following:~~

39  
40 ~~(A) Cord retraction and final impressions for permanent indirect restorations,~~  
41 ~~including impression taking of prepared teeth in maxillary and mandibular~~  
42 ~~arches, one time per arch with elastomeric impression materials.~~

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1           ~~(B) Impressions for toothborne removable prostheses, including, at a minimum,~~  
2           ~~taking a total of four impressions on maxillary and mandibular arches with~~  
3           ~~simulated edentulous sites and rest preparations on at least two supporting~~  
4           ~~teeth in each arch.~~

5  
6           ~~(3) Clinical instruction shall include taking final impressions on five cord retraction~~  
7           ~~patients, with one used for a clinical examination.~~

8  
9           ~~(m) With respect to placing, contouring, finishing, and adjusting direct restorations:~~

10  
11           ~~(1) Didactic instruction shall contain the following:~~

12  
13                   ~~(A) Review of cavity preparation factors and restorative material.~~

14  
15                   ~~(B) Review of cavity liner, sedative, and insulating bases.~~

16  
17                   ~~(C) Characteristics and manipulation of direct filling materials.~~

18  
19                   ~~(D) Amalgam restoration placement, carving, adjusting and finishing, which~~  
20                   ~~includes principles, techniques, criteria and evaluation, and description and goals~~  
21                   ~~of amalgam placement, adjusting and finishing in children and adults.~~

22  
23                   ~~(E) Glass ionomer restoration placement, carving, adjusting, contouring and~~  
24                   ~~finishing, which includes, principles, techniques, criteria and evaluation, and~~  
25                   ~~description and goals of glass ionomer placement and contouring in children and~~  
26                   ~~adults.~~

27  
28                   ~~(F) Composite restoration placement, carving, adjusting, contouring and finishing~~  
29                   ~~in all cavity classifications, which includes, principles, techniques, criteria, and~~  
30                   ~~evaluation.~~

31  
32           ~~(2) Laboratory instruction shall include typodont experience on the following:~~

33  
34                   ~~(A) Placement of Class I, II, and V amalgam restorations in eight prepared~~  
35                   ~~permanent teeth for each classification, and in four deciduous teeth for each~~  
36                   ~~classification.~~

37  
38                   ~~(B) Placement of Class I, II, III, and V composite resin restorations in eight~~  
39                   ~~prepared permanent teeth for each classification, and in four deciduous teeth~~  
40                   ~~for each classification.~~

41  
42                   ~~(C) Placement of Class I, II, III, and V glass ionomer restorations in four prepared~~  
43                   ~~permanent teeth for each classification, and in four deciduous teeth for each~~  
44                   ~~classification.~~

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1  
2 ~~(3) Simulated clinical instruction shall include experience with typodonts mounted in~~  
3 ~~simulated heads on a dental chair or in a simulation laboratory as follows:~~

4  
5 ~~(A) Placement of Class I, II, and V amalgam restorations in four prepared~~  
6 ~~permanent teeth for each classification, with one of each classification used for a~~  
7 ~~clinical examination.~~

8  
9 ~~(B) Placement of Class I, II, III, and V composite resin restorations in four~~  
10 ~~prepared permanent teeth for each classification, with one of each classification~~  
11 ~~used for a clinical examination.~~

12  
13 ~~(C) Placement of Class I, II, III, and V glass ionomer restorations in four prepared~~  
14 ~~permanent teeth for each classification, with one of each classification used for a~~  
15 ~~clinical examination.~~

16  
17 ~~(4) Clinical instruction shall require proficient completion of placing, contouring and~~  
18 ~~finishing at least twenty (20) direct restorations in prepared permanent teeth with the~~  
19 ~~following requirements:~~

20  
21 ~~(A) At least fifty (50) percent of the experiences shall be Class II restorations~~  
22 ~~using esthetic materials.~~

23  
24 ~~(B) At least twenty (20) percent of the experiences shall be Class V restorations~~  
25 ~~using esthetic materials.~~

26  
27 ~~(C) At least ten (10) percent of the experiences shall use amalgam.~~

28  
29 ~~(D) Students who complete the 20 restorations and meet all the instructional~~  
30 ~~requirements of this Section may complete additional Class I, II, III or V~~  
31 ~~restorations as deemed appropriate for program success.~~

32  
33 ~~(n) With respect to polishing and contouring existing amalgam restorations:~~

34  
35 ~~(1) Didactic instruction shall include principles, techniques, criteria and evaluation, and~~  
36 ~~description and goals of amalgam polishing and contouring in children and adults.~~

37  
38 ~~(2) Laboratory instruction shall include typodont experience on polishing and contouring~~  
39 ~~of Class I, II, and V amalgam restorations in three prepared permanent teeth for each~~  
40 ~~classification, and in two deciduous teeth for each classification.~~

41  
42 ~~(3) Simulated clinical instruction shall include experience with typodonts mounted in~~  
43 ~~simulated heads on a dental chair or in a simulation laboratory in the polishing and~~

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1       ~~contouring of Class I, II, and V amalgam restorations in two prepared permanent teeth~~  
2       ~~for each classification, with one of each classification used for a clinical examination.~~

3  
4       ~~(o) With respect to adjusting and cementing permanent indirect restorations:~~

5  
6       ~~(1) Didactic instruction shall contain the following:~~

7  
8               ~~(A) Review of fixed prosthodontics related to classification and materials for~~  
9               ~~permanent indirect~~  
10              ~~restorations, general crown preparation for permanent indirect restorations, and~~  
11              ~~laboratory fabrication of permanent indirect restorations.~~

12  
13              ~~(B) Interocclusal registrations for fixed prosthesis, including principles,~~  
14              ~~techniques, criteria, and evaluation.~~

15  
16              ~~(C) Permanent indirect restoration placement, adjustment, and cementation,~~  
17              ~~including principles, techniques, criteria, and evaluation.~~

18  
19       ~~(2) Laboratory instruction shall include:~~

20  
21              ~~(A) Interocclusal registrations using elastomeric and resin materials. Two~~  
22              ~~experiences with each material are required.~~

23  
24              ~~(B) Fitting, adjustment, and cementation of permanent indirect restorations on~~  
25              ~~one anterior and one posterior tooth for each of the following materials, with~~  
26              ~~one of each type used for a practical examination: ceramic, ceramometal, and~~  
27              ~~cast metallic.~~

28  
29       ~~(3) Clinical experience for interocclusal registrations shall be performed on four patients~~  
30       ~~who are concurrently having final impressions recorded for permanent indirect~~  
31       ~~restorations, with one experience used for a clinical examination.~~

32  
33       ~~(4) Clinical instruction shall include fitting, adjustment, and cementation of permanent~~  
34       ~~indirect restorations on at least two teeth.~~

35  
36       ~~(p) Each student shall pass a written examination that reflects the curriculum content, which~~  
37       ~~may be administered at intervals throughout the course as determined by the course director.~~

38  
39       ~~(q) To maintain approval, programs approved prior to the effective date of these regulations~~  
40       ~~shall submit to the Board a completed "Notice of Compliance with New Requirements for~~  
41       ~~Registered Dental Assistant in Extended Functions Educational Programs (New 10/10)", hereby~~  
42       ~~incorporated by reference, within ninety (90) days of the effective date of these regulations.~~

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 Note: Authority cited: Section 1614, Business and Professions Code. Reference: Section 1753,  
2 Business and Professions Code.

3  
4 **§ 1071.1. Requirements for Approval of RDAEF Educational Programs. [Repealed]**

5  
6 Note: Authority cited: Section 1614, Business and Professions Code. Reference: Section 1756,  
7 Business and Professions Code.

8  
9 ~~**§ 1072. Approval of RDH Educational Programs.**~~

10 ~~(a) It is the intent of this board to approve only those educational programs for dental~~  
11 ~~hygienists which continuously maintain a high quality standard of instruction. The requirements~~  
12 ~~contained in this article are designed to that end and govern the approval of educational~~  
13 ~~programs for dental hygienists. Continuation of approval will be contingent upon compliance~~  
14 ~~with these requirements.~~

15  
16 ~~(b) An educational program for registered dental hygienists is one which has as its primary~~  
17 ~~purpose providing college level programs leading to an associate or higher degree, which is~~  
18 ~~either affiliated with or conducted by an approved dental school, or which is accredited to offer~~  
19 ~~college level or college parallel programs by the American Dental Association Commission on~~  
20 ~~Dental Accreditation or an equivalent body.~~

21  
22 ~~(c) A new educational program for registered dental hygienists in California shall apply for~~  
23 ~~approval prior to operation. The board may approve, provisionally approve, or deny approval to~~  
24 ~~any such program. The board may, in lieu of conducting its own investigation, accept the~~  
25 ~~findings of any commission or accreditation agency approved by the board and adopt those~~  
26 ~~findings as its own.~~

27  
28 ~~Note: Authority cited: Section 1614, Business and Professions Code. Reference: Section 1758,~~  
29 ~~Business and Professions Code.~~

30  
31 ~~**§ 1072.1. Requirements for RDH Educational Programs.**~~

32 ~~An educational program for RDHs shall comply with the requirements set forth below in order~~  
33 ~~to secure and maintain approval by the board.~~

34  
35 ~~(a) Physical Plant. The physical plant and equipment shall be maintained and replaced in a~~  
36 ~~manner designed to provide students with the most modern or educationally optimal~~  
37 ~~environment.~~

38  
39 ~~(b) Library. The library resources of an educational program for dental hygienists shall be broad~~  
40 ~~enough to meet the teaching and research needs of the institution.~~

41  
42 ~~(c) Admission.~~

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1       ~~(1) The minimum basis for admission to an approved educational program for dental~~  
2       ~~hygienists shall be the successful completion of an accredited high school course, or the~~  
3       ~~recognized equivalent, which will permit entrance to an accredited college of liberal~~  
4       ~~arts.~~

5  
6       ~~(2) An accredited college of liberal arts shall mean an institution approved by the~~  
7       ~~Association of American Universities or by one of the regional accrediting agencies.~~

8  
9       ~~(3) The selection of students for admission to a hygiene educational program shall be~~  
10       ~~based on estimates of their capacity for success in the study of dental hygiene as~~  
11       ~~determined by evaluation of all available and significant information including~~  
12       ~~information regarding background, knowledge, aptitude for and interest in the study and~~  
13       ~~practice of dental hygiene, and the range of subject matter and quality of their~~  
14       ~~scholastic record.~~

15  
16       ~~(d) Instruction.~~

17  
18       ~~(1) Instruction upon all levels in an educational program for dental hygienists shall be~~  
19       ~~conducted upon the premise that dental hygiene education shall meet the test of a true~~  
20       ~~university discipline and shall include lectures, laboratory experiments and exercises and~~  
21       ~~clinical practice under supervision.~~

22  
23       ~~(2) The term "university discipline" shall be interpreted as a level of instruction at least~~  
24       ~~equivalent to that level of instruction represented by college courses in the basic~~  
25       ~~sciences commonly offered in approved dental schools.~~

26  
27       ~~(e) Standards of Proficiency. Each school shall establish and maintain standards of proficiency~~  
28       ~~and accomplishment of a qualitative nature, emphasizing thoroughness of didactic and~~  
29       ~~laboratory requirements and precision in manual skills. Such standards shall be available to~~  
30       ~~each student, and shall be used to ascertain periodic progress or achievement in the~~  
31       ~~curriculum.~~

32  
33       ~~(f) Faculty. An educational program for dental hygienists shall employ an adequate staff of~~  
34       ~~competent full-time faculty members having general education, professional training and~~  
35       ~~teaching experience.~~

36  
37       ~~(g) Curriculum.~~

38  
39       ~~(1) The organization of the curriculum for dental hygienists shall be flexible, creating~~  
40       ~~opportunities for adjustments to and research of, advances in the practice of dentistry~~  
41       ~~and dental hygiene.~~

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 ~~(2) The following factors should be considered in establishing and maintaining a~~  
2 ~~balanced curriculum in the sense that it shall not over-emphasize any level or area of~~  
3 ~~instruction:~~

4  
5 ~~(A) Respective contribution to the practice of dental hygiene;~~

6  
7 ~~(B) Effectiveness of instruction;~~

8  
9 ~~(C) Time necessary for student independent study.~~

10  
11 ~~(3) The general content of the curriculum shall include four subject areas: general~~  
12 ~~studies, biomedical sciences, dental sciences and clinical sciences and practice. It shall~~  
13 ~~also include didactic and laboratory instruction of those registered dental assistant~~  
14 ~~duties specifically delegable by a licensed dentist to a registered dental hygienist. (The~~  
15 ~~following guidelines are not to be interpreted as requiring specific courses in each, but~~  
16 ~~rather as areas of instruction which shall be included in the curriculum.)~~

17  
18 ~~General Subject Matter~~

19 ~~Speech English Sociology Psychology Biomedical Sciences~~

20 ~~General and Microscopic Anatomy Physiology Microbiology Pathology Nutrition~~

21 ~~Pharmacology (Basic sciences necessary as a foundation for the instruction of~~

22 ~~Biomedical Sciences shall be included in, or be a prerequisite to, the curriculum of~~  
23 ~~approved RDH programs) Dental Sciences~~

24 ~~Anesthesia Dental and Medical Emergencies Tooth Morphology Head, Neck and Oral~~

25 ~~Anatomy Oral Pathology Oral Embryology and Histology Dental Materials Clinical~~

26 ~~Sciences and Practice~~

27 ~~Periodontology Clinical Dental Hygiene Legal and Ethical Aspects of Dentistry Oral~~

28 ~~Health Education Community Dental Health~~

29  
30 ~~(4) Content of the curriculum for approved dental hygiene educational programs shall~~  
31 ~~specifically include instruction in:~~

32  
33 ~~(A) periodontal soft tissue curettage;~~

34  
35 ~~(B) administration of local anesthetic agents, infiltration and conductive, limited~~  
36 ~~to the oral cavity;~~

37  
38 ~~(C) administration of nitrous oxide and oxygen when used as an analgesic,~~  
39 ~~utilizing fail safe type machines containing no other general anesthetic agents;~~  
40 ~~provided, however, that a graduate of a nonresident program which meets all~~  
41 ~~the requirements of Sections 1072 and 1072.1 except those contained in Section~~  
42 ~~1072.1(g)(4), shall be deemed to have completed an approved program if such~~  
43 ~~person has successfully completed a board approved course of instruction in~~

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 ~~each of the functions described in Section 1072.1(g)(4) which were not taught to~~  
2 ~~clinical proficiency in the nonresident dental hygiene program.~~

3  
4 ~~(h) Length of Program. A dental hygienist educational program shall be two academic years, not~~  
5 ~~less than 1,600 clock hours, and lead to a certificate.~~

6  
7 ~~Note: Authority cited: Section 1614, Business and Professions Code. Reference: Sections 1614,~~  
8 ~~1758 and 1759, Business and Professions Code.~~

9  
10 **§ 1074. Extramural Facility.**

11 (a) As used in this article "extramural dental facility" means any clinical facility employed by an  
12 approved dental hygiene educational program for instruction in dental hygiene which exists  
13 outside or beyond the walls, boundaries, or precincts of the primary campus of the approved  
14 program and in which dental hygiene services are rendered.

15  
16 (b) An approved dental hygiene educational program shall register extramural dental facilities  
17 with the board. Such registration shall be accompanied by information supplied by the dental  
18 hygiene program pertaining to faculty supervision, scope of treatment to be rendered, name  
19 and location of the facility, date operation will commence, discipline of which such instruction  
20 is a part, and a brief description of the equipment and facilities available. The foregoing  
21 information shall be supplemented with a copy of the agreement between the approved dental  
22 hygiene program or parent university, and the affiliated institution establishing the contractual  
23 relationship. Any change in the information initially provided to the board shall be  
24 communicated to the board.

25  
26 Note: Authority cited: Section 1614, Business and Professions Code. Reference: Sections 1614  
27 and 1758, Business and Professions Code.

28  
29 **§ 1075. List of Approved Programs.**

30 The board's executive officer shall maintain on file a current listing of educational programs  
31 approved by the board for the giving of resident professional instruction for registered dental  
32 auxiliaries. The list of approved RDH educational programs may include those educational  
33 programs approved for such instruction by a commission or accreditation agency approved by  
34 the board.

35  
36 Note: Authority cited: Section 1614, Business and Professions Code. Reference: Sections 1614,  
37 1753 and 1758, Business and Professions Code.

38  
39 **Article 3. Application for Licensure**

40  
41 **§ 1076. General Application Requirements.**

42 ~~(a) Application for licensure as a registered dental auxiliary shall be made on a form prescribed~~  
43 ~~by the board and shall be accompanied by the following:~~



**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 ~~(1) The fees fixed by the board;~~

2  
3 ~~(2) Two classifiable sets of fingerprints on forms provided by the board;~~

4  
5 ~~(3) Where applicable, a record of any previous dental assisting or hygiene practice and~~  
6 ~~verification of license status in another jurisdiction.~~

7  
8 (b) Completed applications shall be filed with the board not later than the following number of  
9 days prior to the date set for the examination for which application is made;

|                 |   |                    |
|-----------------|---|--------------------|
| RDH             | - | 45 days            |
| RDA             | - | <del>60 days</del> |
| RDAEF and RDHEF | - | 45 days            |

10  
11 An incomplete application shall be deemed deficient and the applicant shall be notified of  
12 outstanding application requirements needed to be fulfilled. returned to the applicant together  
13 with a statement setting forth the reason for returning the application and indicating the  
14 amount of money, if any, which will be refunded. Applications shall be deemed abandoned  
15 pursuant to the provisions set forth in Section 1004.

16  
17 An application shall not be deemed incomplete for failure to establish compliance with  
18 educational requirements if the application is accompanied by a certification from an approved  
19 program that the applicant is expected to meet all educational requirements established for the  
20 license for which application has been made and if the approved program certifies not less than  
21 30 days prior to examination that the applicant has in fact met such educational requirements.

22  
23 ~~The processing times for dental auxiliary licensure are set forth in Section 1069.~~

24 (c) Permission to take an examination shall be granted to those applicants who have paid the  
25 necessary fees and whose credentials have been approved by the executive officer. Nothing  
26 contained herein shall be construed to limit the board's authority to seek from an applicant  
27 such other information as may be deemed necessary to evaluate the applicant's qualifications.

28  
29 Note: Authority cited: Section 1614, Business and Professions Code. Reference: Sections 1614,  
30 1753, 1754, 1758 and 1759, Business and Professions Code; and Section 15376, Government  
31 Code.

32  
33 **§ 1077. Application for Registered Dental Assistant (RDA) Licensure Applications.**

34 (a) An applicant for licensure as a registered dental assistant shall submit an "Application for  
35 Registered Dental Assistant (RDA) Examination and Licensure" RDA-1 (New [INSERT DATE]) and  
36 one of the following certification forms specifying the applicants qualification method: (1)  
37 "Certification of Board Approved Registered Dental Assisting Program Completion" RDA-2  
38 (Board Approved Education Only) (New [INSERT DATE]), (2) "Certification of Work Experience as  
39 a Dental Assistant" RDA-3 (Work Experience Only) (New [INSERT DATE]), or (3) "Certification of  
40 Non-Approved Dental Assisting Program Completion" RDA-4 (Mixed Education and Work  
41 Experience) (New [INSERT DATE]). These forms are hereby incorporated by reference.

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1  
2 (1) All applications for registered dental assistant examination and licensure shall be  
3 accompanied by the following information:

4  
5 (A) The application and examination fees as set by Section 1022;

6  
7 (B) Satisfactory evidence that the applicant has met all applicable requirements  
8 of Section 1752.1 of the Code;

9  
10 (C) Two classifiable sets of fingerprints or a completed Live Scan form to  
11 establish the identity of the applicant and to permit the Board to conduct a  
12 criminal history record check. The applicant shall pay any costs for furnishing the  
13 fingerprints and conducting the criminal history record check;

14  
15 (D) Where applicable, a record of any previous dental assisting, orthodontic  
16 assisting, dental sedation assisting, dental hygiene, dentistry or any other health  
17 care profession practice and certification of license status in each state or  
18 jurisdiction in which licensure has been obtained;

19  
20 (E) Applicant's name, social security number, federal employer identification  
21 number (FEIN), or individual taxpayer identification number (ITIN), mailing  
22 address, electronic mail address, and telephone number(s);

23  
24 (F) Evidence of having successfully completed board-approved courses in  
25 radiation safety and coronal polishing. One of the following documents is  
26 required for each course:

27  
28 (1) An original or copy of the course certificate issued by a board  
29 approved program or stand-alone course provider.

30 (2) A letter on program or course letterhead, signed by the program  
31 director, certifying completion of the course and the completion date.

32  
33 (G) Evidence of having successfully completed the following:

34  
35 (1) A 2-hour board approved course in the Dental Practice Act. One of the  
36 following documents is required:

37  
38 (i) An original or copy of the course certificate issued by a board  
39 approved provider, dated within the five years immediately  
40 preceding the date the application was received by the Board; or,

41  
42 (ii) A letter on school or program letterhead, signed by the  
43 program director, certifying completion of the course and the

**WORKING DOCUMENT:**  
**DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1                   completion date dated within the five years immediately  
2                   preceding the date the application was received by the Board.

3  
4                   (2) An 8-hour board approved course in Infection Control. One of the  
5                   following documents is required:

6  
7                   (i) An original or copy of the course certificate issued by a board  
8                   approved provider, dated within the five years immediately  
9                   preceding the date the application was received by the Board; or,

10  
11                   (ii) A letter on school or program letterhead, signed by the  
12                   program director, certifying completion of the course and the  
13                   completion date, dated within the five years immediately  
14                   preceding the date the application was received by the Board.

15  
16                   (3) A course in basic life support (BLS) offered by an instructor approved  
17                   by the American Red Cross or the American Heart Association, or any  
18                   other course approved by the board as equivalent. The following  
19                   documentation is required:

20  
21                   (i) A copy of the BLS certification card, to include any required  
22                   signatures. The BLS card shall be valid and current.

23  
24                   (H) Successful completion of the RDA General and Law and Ethics Written  
25                   Examination.

26  
27                   (2) In addition to the requirements set forth in subdivision (a), an application for  
28                   licensure as a registered dental assistant shall be accompanied by one of the following:

29  
30                   (a) If qualifying for registered dental assistant licensure by graduation from an  
31                   educational program in registered dental assisting approved by the board, the  
32                   applicant shall provide one of the following:

33  
34                   (1) An original "Certification of Board Approved Registered Dental  
35                   Assisting Program Completion" RDA-2 (Board Approved Education Only)  
36                   (New [INSERT DATE]); or

37                   (2) A copy of the Dental Assisting diploma or certificate issued by an  
38                   educational program in registered dental assisting approved by the  
39                   board; or,

40  
41                   (3) A letter on school or program letterhead, signed by the program  
42                   director, certifying completion of an educational program in registered  
43                   dental assisting approved by the board. The letter shall include the

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1                   student’s full name, dates of attendance, and the actual date of  
2                   graduation.

3  
4                   (b) If qualifying for registered dental assistant licensure by completion of work  
5                   experience the applicant shall provide an original “Certification of Work  
6                   Experience as a Dental Assistant” RDA-3 (New [INSERT DATE]). The form shall  
7                   show evidence of completion of satisfactory work experience of at least 15  
8                   months (1280 hours) as a dental assistant in California or another state or U.S.  
9                   territory. The form shall be signed/certified by a licensed dentist in California or  
10                   another state or U.S. territory. The certifying dentist is required to have been  
11                   licensed during the time certified on the form.

12  
13                   (c) If qualifying for registered dental assistant licensure by graduation from a  
14                   dental assisting program in a postsecondary institution approved by the  
15                   Department of Education or in a secondary institution, regional occupational  
16                   center, or regional occupational program, that are not, however, approved by  
17                   the board and work experience the applicant shall provide an original  
18                   “Certification of Non-Approved Dental Assisting Program Completion” and  
19                   “Certification of Work Experience as a Dental Assistant” RDA-4 (New [INSERT  
20                   DATE]).

21  
22                   ~~(a) In addition to the requirements set forth in Section 1076, an application for licensure~~  
23                   ~~as a registered dental assistant shall be accompanied by the following:~~

24  
25                   ~~(1) satisfactory evidence that the applicant has been granted a diploma or~~  
26                   ~~certificate in dental assisting from an educational program approved by the~~  
27                   ~~board; or~~

28  
29                   ~~(2) satisfactory evidence that the applicant has met the required 18 months~~  
30                   ~~satisfactory work experience as a dental assistant. “Satisfactory work~~  
31                   ~~experience” means performance of the duties specified in Section 1085(b)~~  
32                   ~~and/or (c) in a competent manner, as determined by the dentist employer. An~~  
33                   ~~applicant shall obtain work experience verification forms from the board and~~  
34                   ~~supply such forms to those persons in whose employ the applicant obtained the~~  
35                   ~~required work experience. The completed form shall be returned to the board by~~  
36                   ~~such person.~~

37  
38                   ~~(A) The 18 months of experience, which shall be gained in California while~~  
39                   ~~employed by a California licensed dentist(s), shall be considered~~  
40                   ~~qualifying only if the experience was comprised of performing duties~~  
41                   ~~specified in Section 1085(b) and/or (c) during a majority of the~~  
42                   ~~experience hours;~~

43  
44                   ~~(B) The 18 months shall be calculated as follows:~~

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

~~1. experience gained while working 20 or more hours per week shall be credited on a weekly basis, with 78 weeks considered equivalent to 18 months;~~

~~2. experience gained while working less than 20 hours per week shall be credited on an hourly basis, with 1,560 hours considered equivalent to 18 months.~~

Note: Authority cited: Section 1614, Business and Professions Code. Reference: Sections 1614, ~~1753~~ and ~~1754~~1752.1, Business and Professions Code.

**§ 1077.1. Application for Registered Dental Assistant in Extended Functions (RDAEF) Licensure Applications.**

(a) An applicant for licensure as a registered dental assistant in extended functions shall submit an "Application for Registered Dental Assistant in Extended Functions (RDAEF) Examination and Licensure" (New [INSERT DATE]).

(1) All applications for registered dental assistant in extended functions examination and licensure shall be accompanied by the following information:

(A) The application and examination fees as set by Section 1022;

(B) Satisfactory evidence that the applicant has met all applicable requirements of Section 1753 of the Code;

(C) Two classifiable sets of fingerprints or a completed Live Scan form to establish the identity of the applicant and to permit the Board to conduct a criminal history record check. The applicant shall pay any costs for furnishing the fingerprints and conducting the criminal history record check;

(D) Where applicable, a record of any previous dental assisting, orthodontic assisting, dental sedation assisting, dental hygiene, dentistry or any other health care profession practice and certification of license status in each state or jurisdiction in which licensure has been obtained;

(E) Applicant's name, social security number, federal employer identification number (FEIN), or individual taxpayer identification number (ITIN), mailing address, electronic mail address, and telephone number(s);

(F) Evidence of current licensure as a registered dental assistant or completion of the requirements for licensure as a registered dental assistant.

(G) Evidence of successful completion of either of the following:

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1  
2 (1) An extended functions postsecondary program approved by the board  
3 in all of the procedures specified in Section 1753.5.

4  
5 (2) An extended functions postsecondary program approved by the board  
6 to teach the duties that registered dental assistants in extended functions  
7 were allowed to perform pursuant to board regulations prior to January  
8 1, 2010, and a course approved by the board in the procedures specified  
9 un paragraphs (1), (2), (5), and (7) to (11), inclusive , of subdivision (b) of  
10 1753.5.

11  
12 (i) To demonstrate successful completion of an RDAEF program,  
13 applicants shall provide one of the following:

14  
15 (1) RDAEF application containing original certification of  
16 Board Approved Registered Dental Assisting in Extended  
17 Functions Program Completion, signed by the program  
18 director, with the school or program seal affixed, or

19  
20 (2) A copy of the diploma or certificate issued by an  
21 educational program in RDAEF approved by the board.

22  
23 (3) A letter on school or program letterhead, signed by the  
24 program director, certifying completion of an educational  
25 program in RDAEF approved by the board. The letter shall  
26 include the student's full name, dates of attendance, and  
27 the actual date of graduation.

28  
29 (H) Evidence of having successfully completed board-approved courses in pit and  
30  fissure sealants. One of the following documents is required:

31  
32 (1) An original or copy of the course certificate issued by a board  
33 approved program or course provider.

34  
35 (2) A letter on school/program letterhead, signed by the program  
36 director, certifying completion of the course and the completion date.

37  
38 (I) Successful completion of the RDAEF Written Examination.

39  
40 (J) Successful completion of the RDAEF clinical and practical examination.

41  
42 ~~In addition to the requirements, including the processing times, set forth in Section 1076, an~~  
43 ~~application for licensure as an RDAEF shall be accompanied by satisfactory evidence that the~~  
44 ~~applicant has successfully completed an approved RDAEF program.~~

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1  
2 Note: Authority cited: Section 1614, Business and Professions Code. Reference: Sections 1614  
3 and ~~1758~~1753, Business and Professions Code.

4  
5 **§ 1077.2. Application for Orthodontic Assistant (OA) Permit.**

6  
7 (a) An applicant for an orthodontic assistant permit shall submit an “Application for  
8 Orthodontic Assistant Examination and Permit” (New [INSERT DATE]).

9  
10 (1) All applications for the orthodontic permit examination and licensure shall be  
11 accompanied by the following information:

12  
13 (A) The application and examination fees as set by Section 1022;

14  
15 (B) Satisfactory evidence that the applicant has met all applicable requirements  
16 of Section 1750.2 of the Code;

17  
18 (C) Two classifiable sets of fingerprints or a completed Live Scan form to  
19 establish the identity of the applicant and to permit the Board to conduct a  
20 criminal history record check. The applicant shall pay any costs for furnishing the  
21 fingerprints and conducting the criminal history record check;

22  
23 (D) Where applicable, a record of any previous dental assisting, orthodontic  
24 assisting, dental sedation assisting, dental hygiene, dentistry or any other health  
25 care profession practice and certification of license status in each state or  
26 jurisdiction in which licensure has been obtained;

27  
28 (E) Applicant’s name, social security number, federal employer identification  
29 number (FEIN), or individual taxpayer identification number (ITIN), mailing  
30 address, electronic mail address, and telephone number(s);

31  
32 (F) Evidence of having successfully completed a board-approved orthodontic  
33 assistant course, which can commence after the completion of six months of  
34 work experience. One of the following shall be provided:

35  
36 (1) OA application containing original certificate of completion of a  
37 board-approved orthodontic assistant permit course, signed by the  
38 program director, with the school or program seal affixed; or,

39  
40 (2) A copy of a diploma or certificate of completion issued by a board-  
41 approved orthodontic assistant permit course; or,

42  
43 (3) A letter on school or program letterhead, signed by the program  
44 director, certifying completion of a board-approved orthodontic assistant

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 permit course. The letter shall include the student's full name, dates of  
2 attendance, and the actual date of graduation.

3  
4 (G) Evidence of either:

5  
6 (1) current, active, and valid licensure as a registered dental assistant, or

7  
8 (2) at least 12 months of verifiable work experience as a dental assistant.  
9 The "Declaration of Certifying Dentist" section of the application shall be  
10 completed and signed by a licensed dentist in California or another state  
11 or U.S. territory. The certifying dentist is required to have been licensed  
12 during the time certified on the form.

13  
14 (I) Evidence of having successfully completed board-approved course in  
15 ultrasonic scaling. One of the following documents is required for each course:

16  
17 (1) An original or copy of the course certificate issued by a board  
18 approved program or stand-alone course provider.

19  
20 (2) A letter on program or course letterhead, signed by the program  
21 director, certifying completion of the course and the completion date.

22  
23 (J) Evidence of having successfully completed the following:

24  
25 (1) A 2-hour board approved course in the Dental Practice Act. One of the  
26 following documents is required:

27  
28 (i) An original or copy of the course certificate issued by a board  
29 approved provider, dated within the five years immediately  
30 preceding the date the application was received by the Board; or,

31  
32 (ii) A letter on school or program letterhead, signed by the  
33 program director, certifying completion of the course and the  
34 completion date dated within the five years immediately  
35 preceding the date the application was received by the Board.

36  
37 (2) An 8-hour board approved course in Infection Control. One of the  
38 following documents is required:

39  
40 (i) An original or copy of the course certificate issued by a board  
41 approved provider, dated within the five years immediately  
42 preceding the date the application was received by the Board; or,



**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1                   (ii) A letter on school or program letterhead, signed by the  
2                   program director, certifying completion of the course and the  
3                   completion date, dated within the five years immediately  
4                   preceding the date the application was received by the Board.

5  
6                   (3) A course in basic life support (BLS) offered by an instructor approved  
7                   by the American Red Cross or the American Heart Association, or any  
8                   other course approved by the board as equivalent. The following  
9                   documentation is required:

10  
11                   (i) A copy of the BLS certification card, to include any required  
12                   signatures. The BLS card shall be valid and current.

13  
14                   (K) Successful completion of the OA Written Examination.

15  
16 Note: Authority cited: Section 1614, Business and Professions Code. Reference: Sections 1614  
17 and 1750.2, Business and Professions Code.

18  
19 **§ 1077.3. Application for Dental Sedation Assistant (DSA) Permit.**

20  
21 a) An applicant for a dental sedation assistant permit shall submit an “Application for Dental  
22 Sedation Assistant Examination and Permit” (New [INSERT DATE]).

23  
24                   (1) All applications for the dental sedation permit examination and licensure shall be  
25                   accompanied by the following information:

26  
27                   (A) The application and examination fees as set by Section 1022;

28  
29                   (B) Satisfactory evidence that the applicant has met all applicable requirements  
30                   of Section 1750.4 of the Code;

31  
32                   (C) Two classifiable sets of fingerprints or a completed Live Scan form to  
33                   establish the identity of the applicant and to permit the Board to conduct a  
34                   criminal history record check. The applicant shall pay any costs for furnishing the  
35                   fingerprints and conducting the criminal history record check;

36  
37                   (D) Where applicable, a record of any previous dental assisting, orthodontic  
38                   assisting, dental sedation assisting, dental hygiene, dentistry or any other health  
39                   care profession practice and certification of license status in each state or  
40                   jurisdiction in which licensure has been obtained;

41  
42                   (E) Applicant’s name, social security number, federal employer identification  
43                   number (FEIN), or individual taxpayer identification number (ITIN), mailing  
44                   address, electronic mail address, and telephone number(s);

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1  
2 (F) Evidence of having successfully completed a board-approved dental sedation  
3 assistant permit course, which can commence after the completion of six  
4 months of work experience. One of the following shall be provided:

5  
6 (1) DSA application containing original certification of board approved  
7 dental sedation assistant permit course, signed by the program director,  
8 with the school or program seal affixed, or

9  
10 (2) A copy of the diploma or certificate of completion issued by the  
11 board-approved dental sedation assistant permit course; or

12  
13 (3) A letter on school or program letterhead, signed by the program  
14 director, certifying completion of the board-approved dental sedation  
15 assistant permit course. The letter shall include the student's full name,  
16 dates of attendance, and the actual date of graduation.

17  
18 (G) Evidence of

19  
20 (1) current, active, and valid licensure as a registered dental assistant, or

21  
22  
23 (2) at least 12 months of verifiable work experience as a dental assistant.  
24 The "Declaration of Certifying Dentist" section of the application shall be  
25 completed and signed by a licensed dentist in California or another state  
26 or U.S. territory. The certifying dentist is required to have been licensed  
27 during the time certified on the form.

28  
29 (I) Evidence of having successfully completed the following:

30  
31 (1) A 2-hour board approved course in the Dental Practice Act. One of the  
32 following documents is required:

33  
34 (i) An original or copy of the course certificate issued by a board  
35 approved provider, dated within the five years immediately  
36 preceding the date the application was received by the Board; or,

37  
38 (ii) A letter on school or program letterhead, signed by the  
39 program director, certifying completion of the course and the  
40 completion date dated within the five years immediately  
41 preceding the date the application was received by the Board.

42  
43 (2) An 8-hour board approved course in Infection Control. One of the  
44 following documents is required:

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1  
2 (i) An original or copy of the course certificate issued by a board  
3 approved provider, dated within the five years immediately  
4 preceding the date the application was received by the Board; or,  
5

6 (ii) A letter on school or program letterhead, signed by the  
7 program director, certifying completion of the course and the  
8 completion date, dated within the five years immediately  
9 preceding the date the application was received by the Board.  
10

11 (3) A course in basic life support (BLS) offered by an instructor approved  
12 by the American Red Cross or the American Heart Association, or any  
13 other course approved by the board as equivalent. The following  
14 documentation is required:  
15

16 (i) A copy of the BLS certification card, to include any required  
17 signatures. The BLS card shall be valid and current.  
18

19 (K) Successful completion of the DSA Written Examination.  
20

21 Note: Authority cited: Section 1614, Business and Professions Code. Reference: Sections 1614  
22 and 1750.4, Business and Professions Code.  
23

**Article 4. Examinations**

24  
25  
26 **§ 1080. General Procedures for Dental Auxiliary Written, Clinical, and Practical Examinations.**

27 The following rules, which are in addition to any other examination rules set forth elsewhere in  
28 this chapter, are adopted for the uniform conduct of all dental auxiliary written and practical  
29 examinations.  
30

31 (a) The ability of an examinee to read and interpret instructions and examination material in  
32 the English language is a part of the examination.  
33

34 (b) No person shall be admitted to an examination room, clinic, or laboratory unless he or she is  
35 wearing the appropriate badge and is directly connected with the examination or it's  
36 administration.  
37

38 (c) Each examinee shall furnish patients, instruments, supplies, engines and materials necessary  
39 to carry the procedures to completion. The board will provide chairs.  
40

41 (d) A patient provided by an examinee shall be at least 18 years of age and shall be in a health  
42 condition acceptable for dental treatment. If conditions indicate a need to consult the patient's  
43 physician or for the patient to be premedicated (e.g. high blood pressure, heart murmur,  
44 rheumatic fever, heart condition, prosthesis), the examinee shall obtain the necessary written

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 medical clearance and/or evidence of premedication before the patient will be accepted. Pre-  
2 medication shall be confirmed by presenting the prescription container.

3  
4 (1) The following condition(s) require either a physician's written clearance or  
5 premedication:

6  
7 (A) Prosthetic joint replacement

8  
9 (2) Pre-medication is REQUIRED for the following high-risk conditions to prevent  
10 endocarditis:

11  
12 (A) Prosthetic cardiac valve

13  
14 (B) Previous Infective Endocarditis

15  
16 (C) Congenital heart disease (CHD)\*

17  
18 (D) Unrepaired cyanotic CHD, including palliative shunts and conducts

19  
20 (E) Completely repaired congenital heart defect with prosthetic material or  
21 device, whether placed by surgery or catheter intervention, during the first six  
22 (6) months after the procedure

23  
24 (F) Repaired CHD with residual defects at the site or adjacent to the site of a  
25 prosthetic patch or prosthetic device (which inhibit endothelialization)

26  
27 (G) Cardiac transplantation recipients who develop cardiac valvulopathy

28  
29 (3) The following conditions require physician clearance for dental treatment:

30  
31 (A) Tuberculosis. Patient shall have been on antibiotics for a minimum of four (4)  
32 weeks.

33  
34 (B) Patient Blood Pressure. The employer/dentists shall certify that the patient's  
35 blood pressure is taken prior to the request for initial acceptance of the patient  
36 and recorded on the medical history form. Candidates are required to provide  
37 their own blood pressure kits. Patients with a blood pressure reading:

38  
39 (1) Of 159/94 or below may proceed with the administration of  
40 anesthesia and request for approval for the cord retraction portion of the  
41 examination.

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1           (2) between 160/95 and 179/109 shall present a physician’s clearance  
2           that includes a statement of the highest blood pressure acceptable for  
3           dental treatment.

4  
5           (3) equal to or greater than 180/110 will not be accepted for this  
6           examination, even if a physician authorizes treatment.

7  
8           (C) AIDS or HIV. Clearance shall state that dental treatment is not  
9           contraindicated.

10  
11           (D) Patients who are currently receiving radiation treatment or chemotherapy.

12  
13           (E) Sickle Cell Anemia.

14  
15           (F) Organ transplant.

16  
17           (G) Steroid use for more than two (2) weeks.

18  
19           (H) Pregnancy. Clearance shall include approved use of topical anesthetic, local  
20           anesthesia treatment and radiographic procedures.

21  
22           (4) Hazardous/Unsuitable Conditions: A patient with a condition hazardous to anyone  
23           directly connected with the examination, or who is deemed unsuitable to sit, or has a  
24           condition that interferes with evaluation for the examination may be rejected at the  
25           discretion of at least two examiners. Whenever a patient is rejected, the reason for such  
26           rejection shall be noted on the examination record and shall be signed by both rejecting  
27           examiners.

28  
29           (A) The following health conditions are NOT acceptable:

30  
31                   (1) Patients with a history of Hepatitis B, C or D, unless non-carrier  
32                   medical clearance is provided.

33  
34                   (2) Patients who have had a heart attack, stroke or cardiac surgery within  
35                   the past six (6) months.

36  
37                   (3) High blood pressure equal to or greater than 180/110 (see patient  
38                   blood pressure guidelines previously stated).

39                   (4) Herpetic lesions in any visible stage or other transmissible disease.

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1  
2                   (5) Acute abscesses, necrotizing ulcerative gingivitis (NUG), severely  
3                   inflamed gingivae (purulent, hemorrhagic, retractable) in the area to be  
4                   treated.

5  
6                   (6) Necrotizing ulcerative gingivitis (NUG/ANUG) anywhere in the mouth.

7  
8                   (7) Conditions requiring special patient management without appropriate  
9                   physician approval may be deemed inappropriate by the Board Examiner.

10  
11 (e) An examinee may be dismissed from the entire examination, and a statement of issues may  
12 be filed against the examinee, for acts which interfere with the Board's objective of evaluating  
13 professional competence. Such acts include, but are not limited to the following:

14                   (1) Allowing another person to take the examination in the place of, and under the  
15                   identity of, the examinee.

16  
17                   (2) Copying or otherwise obtaining examination answers from other persons during the  
18                   course of an examination.

19  
20                   (3) Bringing any notes, books, pictures, tape recorders, electronic devices, any  
21                   informative materials, or other unauthorized materials into the examination area.

22  
23                   (4) Assisting another examinee during the examination process.

24  
25                   (5) Using the equipment, instruments, or materials belonging to another examinee.

26  
27                   (6) Copying, photographing or in any way reproducing or recording examination  
28                   questions or answers.

29  
30                   (7) Presenting radiographs which have been altered or contrived to represent other  
31                   than the patient's true condition, whether or not the misleading radiograph was created  
32                   by the examinee.

33  
34                   (8) Failing to comply with the board's infection control regulations.

35  
36                   (9) Failing to use an aspirating syringe for administering local anesthesia.

37  
38                   (10) Premedicating a patient for purposes of sedation.

39  
40                   (11) Dismissing a patient without the approval and signature of an examiner.  
41  
42

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1       (12) Leaving the assigned examination area without the permission of an exam  
2       administrator.

3  
4       (13) Bringing a previously prepared procedure or any portion thereof into an laboratory  
5       examination.

6  
7       (14) Failing to follow directions relative to the conduct of the examination, including  
8       termination of the examination at the scheduled or announced time.

9  
10      (f) An examinee may be declared by the board to have failed the entire examination for  
11      demonstration of gross incompetence in treating a patient.

12  
13      Note: Authority cited: Section 1614, Business and Professions Code. Reference: Sections 1753, ,  
14      Business and Professions Code.

15  
16      ~~**§ 1080.1. General Procedures for Dental Auxiliary Clinical Examinations.**~~

17      ~~The following rules, which are in addition to any other examination rules set forth elsewhere in~~  
18      ~~this chapter, are adopted for the uniform conduct of all dental auxiliary clinical examinations.~~

19  
20      ~~(a) Each examinee shall furnish patients, instruments, engines and materials necessary to carry~~  
21      ~~the procedures to completion. The board will provide chairs.~~

22  
23      ~~(b) A patient provided by an examinee shall be at least 18 years of age and shall be in a health~~  
24      ~~condition acceptable for dental treatment. If conditions indicate a need to consult the patient's~~  
25      ~~physician or for the patient to be premedicated (e.g. high blood pressure, heart murmur,~~  
26      ~~rheumatic fever, heart condition, prosthesis), the examinee shall obtain the necessary written~~  
27      ~~medical clearance and/or evidence of premedication before the patient will be accepted. The~~  
28      ~~examiners may, in their discretion, reject a patient who in the opinion of at least two examiners~~  
29      ~~has a condition which interferes with evaluation or which may be hazardous to the patient,~~  
30      ~~other patients, examinees or examiners. A hazardous condition includes, but is not limited to,~~  
31      ~~acute symptomatic hepatitis, active herpetic lesions, acute periodontal or periapical abscesses,~~  
32      ~~or necrotizing ulcerative gingivitis. Whenever a patient is rejected, the reason for such rejection~~  
33      ~~shall be noted on the examination record and shall be signed by both rejecting examiners.~~

34  
35      ~~(c) No person shall be admitted to an examination clinic unless he or she is wearing the~~  
36      ~~appropriate identification badge.~~

37  
38      ~~(d) An examinee may be dismissed from the entire examination, and a statement of issues may~~  
39      ~~be filed against the examinee, for acts which interfere with the Board's objective of evaluating~~  
40      ~~professional competence. Such acts include, but are not limited to the following:~~

41  
42              ~~(1) Allowing another person to take the examination in the place of, and under the~~  
43              ~~identity of, the examinee.~~

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 ~~(2) Bringing any notes, books, pictures, tape recorders, or other unauthorized materials~~  
2 ~~into the examination area.~~

3  
4 ~~(3) Assisting another examinee during the examination process.~~

5  
6 ~~(4) Using the equipment, instruments, or materials belonging to another examinee.~~

7  
8 ~~(5) Presenting radiographs which have been altered, or contrived to represent other~~  
9 ~~than the patient's true condition, whether or not the misleading radiograph was created~~  
10 ~~by the examinee.~~

11  
12 ~~(6) Failing to comply with the board's infection control regulations.~~

13  
14 ~~(7) Failing to use an aspirating syringe for administering local anesthesia.~~

15  
16 ~~(8) Premedicating a patient for purposes of sedation.~~

17  
18 ~~(9) Dismissing a patient without the approval and signature of an examiner.~~

19  
20 ~~(10) Leaving the assigned examination area without the permission of an exam~~  
21 ~~administrator.~~

22  
23 ~~(11) Failing to follow directions relative to the conduct of the examination, including~~  
24 ~~termination of the examination at the scheduled or announced time.~~

25  
26 ~~(e) An examinee may be declared by the board to have failed the entire examination for~~  
27 ~~demonstration of gross incompetence in treating a patient.~~

28  
29 ~~Note: Authority cited: Section 1614, Business and Professions Code. Reference: Sections 1753,~~  
30 ~~1756, 1758 and 1761, Business and Professions Code.~~

31  
32 **§ 1080.2 1080.1. Conduct of Dental Auxiliary Examinations.**

33  
34 Examinations shall be anonymous. An anonymous examination is one conducted in accordance  
35 with procedures, including but not limited to those set forth below, which ensure and preserve  
36 anonymity of applicants.

37  
38 (a) The board shall randomly assign each applicant a number and said applicant shall be known  
39 by that number throughout the entire examination.

40  
41 (b) Grading examiners shall not view examinees during the performance of the examination  
42 assignments.



**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 (c) There shall be no communications between grading examiners and floor examiners except  
2 for oral communications conducted in the presence of board staff. There shall be no  
3 communication between grading examiners and examinees except written communications on  
4 board approved forms.

5  
6 Note: Authority cited: Section 1614, Business and Professions Code. Reference: Sections 1753,  
7 1756, 1758 and 1761, Business and Professions Code.

8  
9 **§ ~~1080.3~~ 1080.2. Dental Auxiliary Licensure Examination Review Procedures; Appeals.**

10 (a) An examinee who has failed an examination shall be provided with notice, upon written  
11 request, of those areas in which he/she is deficient in the practical or clinical phases of such  
12 examination.

13  
14 (b) An unsuccessful examinee who has been informed of the areas of deficiency in his/her  
15 performance on the practical or clinical phases of the examination and who has determined  
16 that one or more of the following errors was made during the course of his/her examination  
17 and grading may appeal to the board within sixty (60) days following receipt of his/her  
18 examination results:

19  
20 (1) Significant procedural error in the examination process;

21  
22 (2) Evidence of adverse discrimination;

23  
24 (3) Evidence of substantial disadvantage to the examinee. Such appeal shall be made by  
25 means of a written letter specifying the grounds upon which the appeal is based. The  
26 Board shall respond to the appeal in writing and may request a personal appearance by  
27 the examinee. The Board shall thereafter take such action as it deems appropriate.

28  
29 Note: Authority cited: Section 1614, Business and Professions Code. Reference: Sections 1611,  
30 1614, 1634, 1750.2, 1750.4, 1752.1, 1753, and 1753.4 ~~1756, 1758 and 1761~~, Business and  
31 Professions Code.

32  
33 **§ 1081. RDA Examination.**

34 An applicant for licensure as an RDA shall complete a written, task-oriented examination  
35 encompassing all duties assignable to RDAs and the settings in which they may be performed.  
36 Such examination may also include any or all of the following subjects:

37  
38 Nutrition and preventive dentistry; materials; oral anatomy and physiology; oral pathology;  
39 pharmacology; morphology; microbiology; dental assisting procedures in general and special  
40 dentistry; principles of business and practice management; legal/ethical aspects of dentistry;  
41 patient-dental personnel psychology; four-handed chairside dental assisting; X-ray; sterilization;  
42 laboratory and office emergency procedures.  
43

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 Note: Authority cited: Section 1614, Business and Professions Code. Reference: Sections 1614  
2 and ~~1753~~ 1752.1, Business and Professions Code.

3  
4 **~~§ 1081.1. RDA Practical Examination Requirements.~~**

5 ~~(a) In addition to the written examination, each applicant for licensure as an RDA shall also take~~  
6 ~~a practical examination consisting of any or all of the procedures listed below. The specific~~  
7 ~~procedures will be assigned by an RDA examination committee appointed by the board. The~~  
8 ~~procedures shall be performed on a full articulated maxillary and mandibular typodont secured~~  
9 ~~with a bench clamp and shall be graded by examiners appointed by the board for that purpose.~~  
10 ~~Each applicant shall furnish the required materials necessary to complete all of the following~~  
11 ~~procedures.~~

12  
13 ~~(1) Placement of a rubber dam;~~

14  
15 ~~(2) Placement of a matrix band for amalgam preparation;~~

16  
17 ~~(3) Placement of a base into a prepared tooth (For purposes of the examination,~~  
18 ~~“prepared tooth” means a tooth from which material has been removed so as to~~  
19 ~~simulate the surgical excision of dental caries);~~

20  
21 ~~(4) Placement of a liner into a prepared tooth;~~

22  
23 ~~(5) Placement of orthodontic separators;~~

24  
25 ~~(6) Placement of a periodontal dressing;~~

26  
27 ~~(7) Placement of a temporary sedative dressing into a prepared tooth.~~

28  
29 ~~(8) Sizing and placement, or intra-oral fabrication, of a temporary crown.~~

30  
31 ~~(9) Temporary cementation of a temporary crown.~~

32  
33 ~~(10) Removal of excess cement from supragingival surfaces with a hand instrument or~~  
34 ~~floss.~~

35  
36 ~~Note: Authority cited: Section 1614, Business and Professions Code. Reference: Sections 1614~~  
37 ~~and 1753, Business and Professions Code.~~

38  
39 **§ 1081.2. RDAEF Clinical Examination Requirements.**

40 (a) Each applicant for licensure as an RDAEF shall successfully complete an examination on a  
41 patient consisting of the procedures set forth below.

42 (1) Cord retraction of gingivae for impression procedures;

43 (2) Taking impressions for cast restorations.

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 The total examination period shall not exceed two and one-half hours after the first request for  
2 approval to begin the cord retraction procedure.

3  
4 (b) Each applicant shall provide one patient upon whom the retraction and impression  
5 procedures shall be performed. If a patient is deemed unacceptable by the examiners, it is the  
6 applicant's responsibility to provide another patient who is acceptable. Time spent to secure an  
7 acceptable replacement patient shall count as part of the two and one-half (2 1/2) hour  
8 maximum testing period. The applicant's ability to select an appropriate patient is considered  
9 part of the examination. An acceptable patient shall meet the criteria set forth in Section 1080  
10 and the following additional criteria:

11 (1) Shall have a minimum of ten teeth per arch.

12  
13 (2) Tooth preparation shall be on a bicuspid or molar and shall have mesial and distal  
14 teeth present next to the prepared tooth which would normally be in contact with the  
15 completed crown.

16  
17 (3) The prepared tooth shall have margins at or below the free gingival crest.

18  
19 (4) The tooth shall be prepared using one of the following preps: 7/8 crown, 3/4 crown  
20 or full crown, including porcelain fused to metal. Alginate impression materials alone  
21 are not acceptable. Tooth shall have been prepared and temporized prior to the arrival  
22 at the examination site.

23  
24 (5) The prepared tooth shall be free from clinical or radiographic pathology, including  
25 the presence of decay, or pulpal exposures.

26  
27 (c) These procedures shall be graded by examiners appointed by the Board. These procedures  
28 may be tested, at the Board's discretion, in a Board-approved dental office or other facilities, by  
29 examiners appointed by the Board.

30  
31 Note: Authority cited: Section 1614, Business and Professions Code. Reference: Section 1756,  
32 Business and Professions Code.

33  
34 **§ 1081.3. RDAEF Practical Examination Requirements.**

35 (a) Each applicant for licensure as an RDAEF shall successfully complete an examination on a  
36 simulated patient head mounted in appropriate position and accommodating an articulated  
37 adult or pediatric typodont in an enclosed environment or mounted on a dental chair in a  
38 dental operatory consisting of the procedures set forth below.

39  
40 (1) Place, condense and finish a composite restoration

41  
42 (2) Place, condense and carve an amalgam restoration

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 The total examination period shall not exceed ninety (90) minutes after receiving approval to  
2 begin.

3  
4 (b) Each applicant shall provide an articulated typodont which has 32 synthetic teeth and soft  
5 rubber gingivae. The typodont shall be articulated. Each applicant shall arrive to the  
6 examination with the typodont stabilized and balanced in occlusion, with enclosed cheeks and  
7 able to mount within the simulator or chair mounted manikin used at the test facility. The  
8 midline of the typodont shall remain lined up with the midline of the manikin during the  
9 examination. The manikin shall be mounted in a simulated patient head, in correct position,  
10 and kept in a correct operating position while the examination procedures are performed.

11  
12 (c) All typodonts shall be stabilized and balanced in occlusion and mounted in the manikin prior  
13 to starting the assigned preparations. The floor examiner shall approve the typodont and the  
14 mounted position before starting the assigned preparations.

15  
16 (d) The possession of extra typodonts, extra loose teeth or templates of preparations in the  
17 examination area is not permitted and is cause for dismissal.

18 At no time during the examination may the head and the cheeks be separated. This is not  
19 permitted and is cause for dismissal.

20  
21 (e) The candidate is required to furnish their own specified typodont, mounting equipment,  
22 instruments, including hand pieces, amalgamators, and supplies necessary to complete the  
23 assignments in the examination.

24  
25  
26 **§ 1083. Passing Grades.**

27  
28 ~~(a) Registered Dental Hygienist. Each applicant for licensure as a registered dental hygienist~~  
29 ~~who attains a grade of 75% in the practical examination designated by the Board shall be~~  
30 ~~considered as having passed the examination.~~

31  
32 ~~(b) Registered Dental Assistant. An applicant for licensure as a registered dental assistant shall~~  
33 ~~be deemed to have passed the required examination only if the applicant has obtained a score~~  
34 ~~of at least 75 on the written examination and at least 75% on the practical examination;~~  
35 ~~provided, however, that an applicant who attains a grade of less than 75% in any single~~  
36 ~~procedure shall be considered to have failed the entire practical examination.~~

37  
38 (a) Registered Dental Assistant (RDA). Prior to issuance of a RDA license, an applicant shall  
39 successfully achieve a passing score on the RDA General and Law and Ethics Written  
40 examination.

41  
42 ~~(c) Registered Dental Assistant in Extended Functions. Each applicant for licensure as an RDAEF~~  
43 ~~who attains a grade of at least 75% on each procedure in the examination shall be deemed to~~  
44 ~~have passed the required examination.~~

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1  
2 (b) Registered Dental Assistant in Extended Functions (RDAEF). Prior to issuance of a RDAEF  
3 license, an applicant shall successfully achieve a passing score on the RDAEF Written  
4 examination, achieve a passing score on both procedures of the Clinical examination as outlined  
5 in Section 1081.2, and achieve a passing score on both procedures of the Practical examination  
6 as outlined in Section 1081.3.

7  
8 ~~(d) Registered Dental Hygienist in Extended Functions. Each applicant for licensure as an RDHEF~~  
9 ~~who attains a grade of at least 75% on each procedure in the examination shall be deemed to~~  
10 ~~have passed the required examination. A registered dental hygienist who has passed the RDAEF~~  
11 ~~examination prior to December 31, 1991 shall be eligible for licensure as an RDHEF without~~  
12 ~~further examination.~~

13  
14 (c) Orthodontic Assistant (OA). Prior to issuance of an OA license, an applicant shall successfully  
15 achieve a passing score on the OA Written examination.

16  
17 (d) Dental Sedation Assistant (DSA). Prior to issuance of a DSA license, an applicant shall  
18 successfully achieve a passing score on the DSA Written examination.

19  
20 ~~Note: Authority cited: Sections 1614 and 1762, Business and Professions Code. Reference:~~  
21 ~~Sections 1611, 1614, 1634, 1753, 1758 and 1759, Business and Professions Code.a~~

22  
23 Note: Authority cited: Sections 1614 Business and Professions Code. Reference: Sections 1611,  
24 1614, 1634, 1750.2, 1750.4, 1752.1, 1753, and 1753.4, Business and Professions Code.

25  
26  
27 **§ 1085. Dental Assistant Duties and Settings.**

28 (a) Unless specifically so provided by regulation, a dental assistant may not perform the  
29 following functions or any other activity which represents the practice of dentistry or requires  
30 the knowledge, skill and training of a licensed dentist:

31  
32 (1) Diagnosis and treatment planning;

33  
34 (2) Surgical or cutting procedures on hard or soft tissue;

35  
36 (3) Fitting and adjusting of correctional and prosthodontic appliances;

37  
38 (4) Prescription of medicines;

39  
40 (5) Placement, condensation, carving or removal of permanent restorations, including  
41 final cementation procedures;

42  
43 (6) Irrigation and medication of canals, try-in cones, reaming, filing or filling of root  
44 canals;

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1  
2 (7) Taking of impressions for prosthodontic appliances, bridges or any other structures  
3 which may be worn in the mouth;

4  
5 (8) Administration of injectable and/or general anesthesia;

6  
7 (9) Oral prophylaxis procedures.

8  
9 ~~(b) A dental assistant may perform such basic supportive dental procedures as the following~~  
10 ~~under the general supervision of a licensed dentist:~~

11  
12 ~~(1) Extra-oral duties or functions specified by the supervising dentist;~~

13  
14 ~~(2) Operation of dental radiographic equipment for the purpose of oral radiography if~~  
15 ~~the dental assistant has complied with the requirements of section 1656 of the Code.~~

16  
17 ~~(3) Examine orthodontic appliances.~~

18  
19 ~~(c) A dental assistant may perform such basic supportive dental procedures as the following~~  
20 ~~under the direct supervision of a licensed dentist when done so pursuant to the order, control~~  
21 ~~and full professional responsibility of the supervising dentist. Such procedures shall be checked~~  
22 ~~and approved by the supervising dentist prior to dismissal of the patient from the office of said~~  
23 ~~dentist.~~

24  
25 ~~(1) Take impressions for diagnostic and opposing models, bleaching trays, temporary~~  
26 ~~crowns and bridges, and sports guards;~~

27  
28 ~~(2) Apply non-aerosol and non-caustic topical agents;~~

29  
30 ~~(3) Remove post-extraction and periodontal dressings;~~

31  
32 ~~(4) Placement of elastic orthodontic separators;~~

33  
34 ~~(5) Remove orthodontic separators;~~

35  
36 ~~(6) Assist in the administration of nitrous oxide analgesia or sedation; however, a dental~~  
37 ~~assistant shall not start the administration of the gases and shall not adjust the flow of~~  
38 ~~the gases unless instructed to do so by the dentist who shall be present at the patient's~~  
39 ~~chairside at the implementation of these instructions. This regulation shall not be~~  
40 ~~construed to prevent any person from taking appropriate action in the event of a~~  
41 ~~medical emergency.~~

42  
43 ~~(7) Hold anterior matrices;~~

44

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1       ~~(8) Remove sutures;~~

2  
3       ~~(9) Take intra-oral measurements for orthodontic procedures;~~

4  
5       ~~(10) Seat adjusted retainers or headgears, including appropriate instructions;~~

6  
7       ~~(11) Check for loose bands;~~

8  
9       ~~(12) Remove arch wires;~~

10  
11       ~~(13) Remove ligature ties;~~

12  
13       ~~(14) Apply topical fluoride, after scaling and polishing by the supervising dentist or a~~  
14       ~~registered dental hygienist;~~

15  
16       ~~(15) Place and remove rubber dams;~~

17  
18       ~~(16) Place, wedge and remove matrices.~~

19  
20       ~~(17) Cure restorative or orthodontic materials in operative site with light curing device.~~

21  
22       ~~For the purpose of this section a supervising licensed dentist is defined as a dentist whose~~  
23       ~~patient is receiving the services of a dental assistant in the treatment facility and is under the~~  
24       ~~direct control of said licensed dentist.~~

25  
26       Note: Authority cited: Section 1614, Business and Professions Code. Reference: Section 1751,  
27       Business and Professions Code.

28  
29       **~~§ 1086. RDA Duties and Settings.~~**

30       ~~(a) Unless specifically so provided by regulation, the prohibitions contained in section 1085 of~~  
31       ~~these regulations apply to registered dental assistants.~~

32  
33       ~~(b) A registered dental assistant may perform all functions which may be performed by a dental~~  
34       ~~assistant.~~

35  
36       ~~(c) Under general supervision, a registered dental assistant may perform the following duties:~~

37  
38               ~~(1) Mouth mirror inspection of the oral cavity, to include charting of obvious lesions,~~  
39               ~~existing restorations and missing teeth;~~

40  
41               ~~(2) Placement and removal of temporary sedative dressings.~~

42  
43       ~~(d) A registered dental assistant may perform the following procedures under the direct~~  
44       ~~supervision of a licensed dentist when done so pursuant to the order, control and full~~

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1 professional responsibility of the supervising dentist. Such procedures shall be checked and  
2 approved by the supervising dentist prior to dismissal of the patient from the office of said  
3 dentist.

4  
5 ~~(1) Obtain endodontic cultures;~~

6  
7 ~~(2) Dry canals, previously opened by the supervising dentist, with absorbent points;~~

8  
9 ~~(3) Test pulp vitality;~~

10  
11 ~~(4) Place bases and liners on sound dentin;~~

12  
13 ~~(5) Remove excess cement from supragingival surfaces of teeth with a hand instrument  
14 or floss;~~

15  
16 ~~(6) Size stainless steel crowns, temporary crowns and bands;~~

17  
18 ~~(7) Fabrication of temporary crowns intra-orally;~~

19  
20 ~~(8) Temporary cementation and removal of temporary crowns and removal of  
21 orthodontic bands;~~

22  
23 ~~(9) Placement of orthodontic separators;~~

24  
25 ~~(10) Placement and ligation of arch wires;~~

26  
27 ~~(11) Placement of post-extraction and periodontal dressings;~~

28  
29 ~~(12) Apply bleaching agents;~~

30  
31 ~~(13) Activate bleaching agents with non-laser light-curing device;~~

32  
33 ~~(14) Take bite registrations for diagnostic models for case study only;~~

34  
35 ~~(15) Coronal polishing (Evidence of satisfactory completion of a board approved course  
36 of instruction in this function shall be submitted to the board prior to any performance  
37 thereof). The processing times for coronal polishing course approval are set forth in  
38 section 1069.~~

39  
40 ~~This procedure shall not be intended or interpreted as a complete oral prophylaxis (a  
41 procedure which can be performed only by a licensed dentist or registered dental  
42 hygienist). A licensed dentist or registered dental hygienist shall determine that the  
43 teeth to be polished are free of calculus or other extraneous material prior to coronal  
44 polishing.~~



**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1  
2 ~~(16) Removal of excess cement from coronal surfaces of teeth under orthodontic~~  
3 ~~treatment by means of an ultrasonic scaler. (Evidence of satisfactory completion of a~~  
4 ~~board approved course of instruction or equivalent instruction in an approved RDA~~  
5 ~~program in this function shall be submitted to the board prior to any performance~~  
6 ~~thereof.) The processing times for ultrasonic scaler course approval are set forth in~~  
7 ~~section 1069.~~

8  
9 ~~(e) Settings. Registered dental assistants may undertake the duties authorized by this section in~~  
10 ~~a treatment facility under the jurisdiction and control of the supervising licensed dentist, or in~~  
11 ~~an equivalent facility approved by the board.~~

12  
13 ~~Note: Authority cited: Section 1614, Business and Professions Code. Reference: Sections 1614~~  
14 ~~and 1754, Business and Professions Code; and Section 15376, Government Code.~~

15  
16 **§ 1087. RDAEF Duties and Settings.**

17 (a) Unless specifically so provided by regulation, the prohibitions contained in Section 1085  
18 apply to RDAEFs.

19  
20 ~~(b) An RDAEF may perform all duties assigned to dental assistants and registered dental~~  
21 ~~assistants.~~

22  
23 ~~(c) An RDAEF may perform the procedures set forth below under the direct supervision of a~~  
24 ~~licensed dentist when done so pursuant to the order, control and full professional responsibility~~  
25 ~~of the supervising dentist. Such procedures shall be checked and approved by the supervising~~  
26 ~~dentist prior to dismissal of the patient from the office of said dentist.~~

27  
28 ~~(1) Cord retraction of gingivae for impression procedures;~~

29  
30 ~~(2) Take impressions for cast restorations;~~

31  
32 ~~(3) Take impressions for space maintainers, orthodontic appliances and occlusal guards.~~

33  
34 ~~(4) Prepare enamel by etching for bonding;~~

35  
36 ~~(5) Formulate indirect patterns for endodontic post and core castings;~~

37  
38 ~~(6) Fit trial endodontic filling points;~~

39  
40 ~~(7) Apply pit and fissure sealants;~~

41  
42 ~~(8) Remove excess cement from subgingival tooth surfaces with a hand instrument;~~

43  
44 ~~(9) Apply etchant for bonding restorative materials.~~

**WORKING DOCUMENT:  
DRAFT PROPOSED REGULATORY LANGUAGE**

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7

~~(d) Settings. Registered dental assistants in extended functions may undertake the duties authorized by this section in a treatment facility under the jurisdiction and control of the supervising licensed dentist, or in an equivalent facility approved by the board.~~

Note: Authority cited: Section 1614, Business and Professions Code. Reference: Sections 1614, 1756 and 1757, Business and Professions Code.